

# *Machine Learning in Survival Analysis*



## **Getting Started**



# *Main Title*

Standard blurb goes here

%%Placeholder for Half title

**Series page goes here (if applicable); otherwise blank**

Machine Learning in Survival Analysis

Raphael Sonabend, Andreas Bender

**Imprint page here; PE will provide text**





---

# *Table of contents*

---

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>Getting Started</b>  | <b>3</b>  |
| <b>Preface</b>  | <b>xi</b> |
| <b>Authors</b>  | <b>xv</b> |
| <b>Symbols and Notation</b>                                       | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>Symbols and Notation</b>                                       | <b>1</b>  |
| <b>1 Introduction</b>   | <b>3</b>  |
| 1.1 Why is this book needed? . . . . .                            | 4         |
| 1.2 Reproducibility . . . . .                                     | 5         |
| <b>I Survival Analysis and Machine Learning</b>                   | <b>7</b>  |
| <b>2 MLSA From Start to Finish</b>                                | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>3 Statistical Learning</b>                                     | <b>11</b> |
| 3.1 Machine Learning . . . . .                                    | 11        |
| 3.1.1 Terminology and Methods . . . . .                           | 12        |
| 3.1.2 Machine Learning in Classification and Regression . . . . . | 15        |
| 3.1.2.1 Classification . . . . .                                  | 15        |
| 3.1.2.2 Regression . . . . .                                      | 15        |
| <b>4 Survival Analysis</b>  | <b>17</b> |
| 4.1 Survival Analysis . . . . .                                   | 17        |
| 4.1.1 Survival Data and Definitions . . . . .                     | 18        |
| 4.1.2 Censoring . . . . .   | 20        |
| 4.2 Book Scope . . . . .  | 22        |
| 4.3 Survival Prediction Problems . . . . .                        | 23        |
| 4.4 Survival Analysis Task . . . . .                              | 25        |
| <b>II Evaluation</b>  | <b>27</b> |
| <b>5 What are Survival Measures?</b>                              | <b>29</b> |
| 5.1 Evaluation Overview . . . . .                                 | 30        |
| 5.1.1 What is Evaluation? . . . . .                               | 30        |
| 5.2 Why are Models Evaluated? . . . . .                           | 31        |
| 5.2.1 How are Models Evaluated? . . . . .                         | 32        |
| 5.3 In-Sample Measures . . . . .                                  | 32        |

|            |   |           |
|------------|---|-----------|
| <b>6</b>   | <b>Evaluating Continuous Rankings</b>                           | <b>35</b> |
| 6.0.1      | Concordance Indices . . . . .                                   | 35        |
| 6.0.2      | AUC Measures . . . . .  | 38        |
| <b>7</b>   | <b>Evaluating Distributions by Calibration Measures</b>         | <b>43</b> |
| 7.0.1      | Point Calibration . . . . .                                     | 44        |
| 7.0.1.1    | Calibration by Reduction . . . . .                              | 45        |
| 7.0.1.2    | Houwelingen's $\alpha$ . . . . .                                | 45        |
| 7.0.2      | Probabilistic Calibration . . . . .                             | 45        |
| 7.0.2.1    | Kaplan-Meier Comparison . . . . .                               | 46        |
| 7.0.2.2    | D-Calibration . . . . .   | 47        |
| 7.0.2.3    | Transparency and Accessibility . . . . .                        | 48        |
| <b>8</b>   | <b>Evaluating Distributions by Scoring Rules</b>                | <b>51</b> |
| 8.0.1      | Classification and Regression Scoring Rules . . . . .           | 52        |
| 8.0.1.1    | Classification . . . . .  | 52        |
| 8.0.1.2    | Regression . . . . .  | 54        |
| 8.0.2      | Survival Scoring Rule Definitions . . . . .                     | 55        |
| 8.0.3      | Common Survival Scoring Rules . . . . .                         | 57        |
| 8.0.3.1    | Squared Survival Losses . . . . .                               | 57        |
| 8.0.3.2    | Log Survival Losses . . . . .                                   | 58        |
| 8.0.3.3    | Absolute Survival Losses . . . . .                              | 59        |
| 8.0.3.4    | Comparing Weighting Methods . . . . .                           | 59        |
| 8.0.3.5    | PECs . . . . .  | 60        |
| 8.0.4      | Properness of Survival Scoring Rules . . . . .                  | 61        |
| 8.0.4.1    | Definitions and Lemmas . . . . .                                | 61        |
| 8.0.4.2    | No Strictly Proper Survival Loss . . . . .                      | 63        |
| 8.0.4.3    | Strictly Proper Approximate Survival Losses . . . . .           | 64        |
| 8.0.4.4    | Non-Proper Approximate Survival Losses . . . . .                | 64        |
| 8.0.5      | Baselines and ERV . . . . .                                     | 65        |
| 8.0.5.1    | Baselines . . . . .   | 65        |
| 8.0.5.2    | Explained Residual Variation . . . . .                          | 65        |
| 8.1        | Conclusions . . . . .   | 66        |
| <b>9</b>   | <b>Evaluating Survival Time</b>                                 | <b>69</b> |
| 9.1        | Distance measures . . . . .                                     | 70        |
| 9.2        | Over- and under-predictions . . . . .                           | 70        |
| <b>10</b>  | <b>Choosing Measures</b>  | <b>73</b> |
| 10.1       | Defining the experiment . . . . .                               | 73        |
| 10.1.1     | Predictive experiments . . . . .                                | 73        |
| 10.1.2     | Benchmark experiments . . . . .                                 | 74        |
| 10.1.3     | Investigation . . . . .   | 75        |
| 10.2       | Conclusions . . . . .   | 75        |
| <b>III</b> | <b>Models</b>   | <b>77</b> |
| <b>11</b>  | <b>Classical Models</b>   | <b>79</b> |
| 11.1       | A Review of Classical Survival Models . . . . .                 | 79        |
| 11.1.1     | Non-Parametric Distribution Estimators . . . . .                | 80        |
| 11.1.2     | Continuous Ranking and Semi-Parametric Models: Cox PH . . . . . | 82        |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 11.1.3 Conditional Distribution Predictions: Parametric Linear Models . .          | 83         |
| <b>12 Machine Learning Survival Models</b>   | <b>89</b>  |
| 12.1 A Survey of Machine Learning Models for Survival Analysis . . . . .           | 89         |
| <b>13 Tree-Based Methods</b>   | <b>93</b>  |
| 13.1 Random Forests . . . . .  | 93         |
| 13.1.1 Random Forests for Regression . . . . .                                     | 93         |
| 13.1.2 Random Forests for Survival Analysis . . . . .                              | 97         |
| 13.1.2.1 Splitting Rules . . . . .   | 97         |
| 13.1.2.2 Terminal Node Prediction . . . . .  | 99         |
| 13.1.3 Conclusions . . . . .   | 101        |
| <b>14 Boosting Methods</b>   | <b>103</b> |
| 14.1 Gradient Boosting Machines . . . . .  | 103        |
| 14.1.1 Gradient Boosting Machines for Regression . . . . .                         | 103        |
| 14.1.1.1 Losses and Learners . . . . .   | 105        |
| 14.1.1.2 Hyper-Parameters . . . . .  | 106        |
| 14.1.2 Gradient Boosting Machines for Survival Analysis . . . . .                  | 106        |
| 14.1.2.1 Cox Survival Models . . . . .   | 107        |
| 14.1.2.2 Ranking Survival Models . . . . .   | 109        |
| 14.1.3 Conclusions . . . . .   | 112        |
| <b>IV Reduction Techniques</b>   | <b>113</b> |
| <b>15 Reductions</b>   | <b>115</b> |
| 15.1 Representing Pipelines . . . . .  | 116        |
| 15.2 Introduction to Composition . . . . .   | 116        |
| 15.2.1 Taxonomy of Compositors . . . . .   | 117        |
| 15.2.2 Motivation for Composition . . . . .  | 118        |
| 15.3 Introduction to Reduction . . . . .   | 119        |
| 15.3.1 Reduction Motivation . . . . .  | 120        |
| 15.3.2 Task, Loss, and Data Reduction . . . . .                                    | 120        |
| 15.3.3 Common Mistakes in Implementation of Reduction . . . . .                    | 121        |
| 15.4 Composition Strategies for Survival Analysis . . . . .                        | 122        |
| 15.4.1 C1) Linear Predictor $\rightarrow$ Distribution . . . . .                   | 123        |
| 15.4.2 C2) Survival Time $\rightarrow$ Distribution . . . . .                      | 124        |
| 15.4.3 C3) Distribution $\rightarrow$ Survival Time Composition . . . . .          | 124        |
| 15.4.4 C4) Survival Model Averaging . . . . .                                      | 124        |
| 15.5 Novel Survival Reductions . . . . .   | 125        |
| 15.5.1 R7-R8) Survival $\rightarrow$ Probabilistic Classification . . . . .        | 125        |
| 15.5.1.1 Composition: Binning Survival Times . . . . .                             | 125        |
| 15.5.1.2 Composition: Survival to Classification Outcome . . . . .                 | 126        |
| 15.5.1.3 Reduction to Classification Bias . . . . .                                | 128        |
| 15.5.1.4 Multi-Label Classification Algorithms . . . . .                           | 128        |
| 15.5.1.5 Censoring in Classification . . . . .                                     | 129        |
| 15.5.1.6 R7) Probabilistic Survival $\rightarrow$ Probabilistic Classification . . | 129        |
| 15.5.1.7 R8) Deterministic Survival $\rightarrow$ Probabilistic Classification .   | 130        |
| 15.6 Conclusions . . . . .   | 132        |
| <b>16 Competing Risks Pipelines</b>  | <b>133</b> |



---

## Preface

---

“Everything happens to everybody sooner or later if there is time enough” - George Bernard Shaw

“...but in this world nothing can be said to be certain, except death and taxes.” - Benjamin Franklin

Together, the epigraphs for this book perfectly and succinctly set up the ‘survival problem’. In maths perhaps we could be even more succinct:  $\forall X(P(X) \rightarrow 1 \text{ as } t \rightarrow \infty)$ . Of course, nothing is immortal and therefore there is never ‘time enough’. Thus creating the predictive ‘survival problem’: given an individual (object), predict when this individual will experience an event of interest. The ‘problem’ in survival analysis is that we implicitly assume the individual *will* experience the event, which is of course not guaranteed (with the exception of death or taxes). To make matters worse, the vast majority of accessible models to make survival predictions, encode an even stricter assumption, that either the event of interest will occur, or, for some completely unrelated reason, it will not. For example, a model assumes either a marathon runner will finish a race, or they won’t due to some arbitrary reason, e.g., someone else pushing them over. This assumption does not reflect the real-world, in practice the runner may not finish the marathon due to some related reasons, such as extreme exhaustion.

A note from RS: When I began writing my PhD thesis I was motivated by two questions: given the enormous power of survival analysis (who doesn’t want to be able to predict the future?), and given the rapid rise in interest in machine learning, i) why are more data scientists not using machine learning? ii) and why do machine learning models fail to outperform simple, classical models that have been around for decades? The answer it transpired was fairly simple, and largely ignored by researchers (including myself), for decades. The survival analysis problem is simply impossible. In 1975, Anastasios Tsiatis published a paper as part of their PhD submission (Tsiatis 1975) demonstrating the ‘non-identifiability problem’ in survival analysis. In the abstract of this paper, Tsiatis sums up the problem we face today: “based on the assumption that [competing events] are independent, may have no resemblance to reality”. In simpler terms, the majority of survival models encode an assumption that is very hard (/impossible) to justify in reality and in doing so, predictions made by these models “may have no resemblance to reality”. Despite this, the majority of this book is going to focus on these models, and we will come back to why after a brief detour to the alternative treatment of events.

A note from AB (competing risks): *Amet occaecat veniam consectetur irure labore sit nulla ex quis non id non. Tempor fugiat dolore eiusmod veniam dolore labore eu adipisicing aliqua quis culpa proident in aliqua. Mollit incididunt sunt mollit id fugiat est eu esse cillum enim. Occaecat culpa sint reprehenderit proident quis duis reprehenderit Lorem sint deserunt cupidatat nisi. Aliquip duis ullamco aliquip ullamco nisi non fugiat eu sunt cupidatat qui eu velit elit. Dolore occaecat id ad reprehenderit ea irure qui mollit nostrud.*

So in this book, we will consider both the ‘standard framework’ and the competing risks

framework. Instead of treating these as two distinct parts to the book, we will interweave methods throughout the narrative, to highlight our belief that all practitioners should have an equally firm grasp on both settings. Where competing risk alternatives do not yet exist, readers are directed to Chapter 15 which includes a section on extending *any* survival model, to the competing risks setting. Some readers may be questioning why we event both including the non-competing framework at all, which is a reasonable question. The answer is threefold, firstly there are times when this setting is appropriate, if you can reasonably justify that the sole reason for an event not occurring is independent of the event itself (we will see examples of this later in the book), then this framework is valid and is the simpler setting; secondly, as mentioned above, any model in this framework can be extended to competing risks, and therefore knowing about these models is still important; thirdly, so that readers who may be reviewing other academic texts, can spot errors and help correct them when found in the wild.

## Overview

We wrote this book as we felt there was a gap in introductory academic textbooks for machine learning that satisfactorily cover the survival setting. There are many good books for machine learning (e.g., James et al. (2013), Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman (2001), Bishop (2006)) and survival analysis (e.g., Collett (2014), J. D. Kalbfleisch and Prentice (1973)) but we hope this book bridges a gap between these two fields. We recommend reading this book alongside (or after) James et al. (2013) and Collett (2014) as we do not want to duplicate content from these books. Instead, we will introduce machine learning methods in the regression setting and then demonstrate how these can extend to survival analysis. In Chapter 1 we explain the motivation of this choice by demonstrating how survival analysis can be reduced to the regression and classification settings and we exploit these results further in Chapter 15.

This book may be useful for Masters or PhD students who are specialising in machine learning in survival analysis, or machine learning practitioners looking to work in the survival setting, or statisticians who are familiar with survival analysis but less so with machine learning. We include examples and exercises in R, Julia, and Python [FIXME].

This book is split into three parts:

**Part I: Survival Analysis and Machine Learning** We begin the book by introducing the basics of survival analysis and machine learning and unifying terminology between the two to enable us to meaningfully talk about ‘machine learning in survival analysis’ (MLSA). Sit cupidatat non enim quis amet anim velit incididunt.

**Part II: MLSA Models** In the second part of the book we begin our deep dive into machine learning models for solving survival analysis problems. We begin with ‘classical’ models that may not be considered ‘machine learning’ and then continue by exploring different classes of machine learning models including random forests, gradient boosting machines, and neural networks. Veniam laboris consequat commodo nostrud in ipsum occaecat consequat ea adipisicing fugiat Lorem nisi in.

**Part III: Evaluating and Extending** In the next part of the book we discuss how to evaluate the models covered in the previous part using measures of discrimination, calibration, and scoring rules. We then discuss how to further extend models and pipelines by making use of composition and reduction and the close links between survival analysis, regression, and classification. Ea ex adipisicing occaecat eu consectetur sunt culpa ad.

In the final chapters of the book we list recommended open-source software for survival

analysis and then conclude the book.

## **Citing this book**

Whilst this book remains a work in progress you can cite it as

Sonabend. R, Bender. A. (2023). Machine Learning in Survival Analysis.  
<https://www.mlsabook.com>.

```
@book{MLSA2023
  title = Machine Learning in Survival Analysis
  editor = {Raphael Sonabend, Andreas Bender},
  url = {https://www.mlsabook.com},
  year = {2023}
}
```

Please see the front page of the book website (<https://www.mlsabook.com>) for full licensing details.

We hope you enjoy reading this book.

Raphael and Andreas





---

## ***Authors***

---

Raphael Sonabend is a Visiting Researcher at Imperial College London and an Open Source Manager at Genomics England. They hold a PhD in statistics, specializing in machine learning applications for survival analysis. They wrote the `mlr3` packages `mlr3proba` and `mlr3benchmark`.

Andreas Bender is...



# Symbols and Notation

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

The most common symbols and notation used throughout this book are presented below; in rare cases where different meanings are intended within the book, this will be made clear.

Lower- and upper-case letters,  $x, X$ , refer to fixed observations and random variables respectively. Bold-face is used to refer to matrices,  $\mathbf{x}$ , and calligraphic letters for sets,  $\mathcal{X}$ . Subscripts denote elements in vectors,  $x_i$ , with two subscripts used to denote rows and columns in matrices,  $x_{ij}$ , a semi-colon refers to the whole row or column,  $x_i$ ; and  $x_{:j}$ , respectively. Typically, a ‘hat’,  $\hat{x}$ , will refer to the prediction or estimation of a variable,  $x$ , and a ‘bar’,  $\bar{x}$ , refers to the sample mean of  $x$ .  $E(X)$  and  $\text{Var}(X)$  are the expectation and mean of the random variable  $X$  respectively. A function  $f$ , will either be written as a formal map of domain to codomain,  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}; (x, y) \mapsto f(x, y)$  (which is most useful for understanding inputs and outputs), or more simply and commonly as  $f(x, y)$ . Given a random variable,  $X$ , following distribution  $\zeta$  (mathematically written  $X \sim \zeta$ ) we denote  $f_X$  to be the probability density function, and analogously for other distribution defining functions. In the survival analysis context (Chapter 4), a subscript “0” refers to a “baseline” function, for example,  $S_0$  is the baseline survival function.

Common variables and acronyms used in the book are given in Table 0.1 and Table 0.2 respectively.

Table 0.1: Common variables used throughout the book.

| Variable   | Definition  |
|--|---|
| $\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}_{>0}, \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}, \bar{\mathbb{R}}$ | Set of Reals, positive Reals (excl. zero), non-negative Reals (incl. zero), and Reals including $\pm\infty$ .   |
| $\mathbb{N}_{>0}$  | Set of Naturals excluding zero.   |
| $(\mathbf{x}, y, c, t, \delta)$                                      | Survival data where $x$ are features, $y, c$ are hypothetical survival and censoring times, $t = \min(y, c)$ and $\delta = \mathbb{I}(t = y)$ where $\mathbb{I}$ is the indicator function (1 if the containing statement is true and 0 otherwise). |
| $\beta$  | Vector of model coefficients/weights.   |
| $\eta$   | Linear predictor, $X\beta$ .  |
| $\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{D}_{train}, \mathcal{D}_{test}$               | Dataset, training data, and testing data.   |

Table 0.2: Common acronyms used throughout the book.

| Acronym | Definition                                  |
|---------|---|
| AFT     | Accelerated Failure Time                    |
| cdf     | Cumulative Distribution Function            |
| chf     | Cumulative Hazard Function                  |
| CPH     | Cox Proportional Hazards                    |
| GBM     | Gradient Boosting Machine                   |
| GLM     | Generalised Linear Model                    |
| IPC(W)  | Inverse Probability of Censoring (Weighted) |
| ML      | Machine Learning                            |
| pdf     | Probability Density Function                |
| PH      | Proportional Hazards                        |
| (S)SVM  | (Survival) Support Vector Machine           |
| t.v.i.  | Taking Values In                            |

# Introduction

---

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

---

## TODO

- Mention somewhere that SA can be used to solve T-year prediction problems (i.e., see if we can get classif users over to SA).
  - Also SA can be used for censoring/truncation
- 

Writing after a global pandemic, applications of survival analysis are more relevant than ever. Predicting the time from onset of COVID-19 symptoms to hospitalisation, or the time from hospitalisation to intubation, or intubation to death, are all time-to-event predictions that are at the centre of survival analysis. As well as morbid applications, survival analysis predictions may be concerned with predicting the time until a customer cancels their gym membership, or the lifetime of a lightbulb; any event that is guaranteed (or at least very likely) to occur can be modelled by a survival analysis prediction. As these predictions can be so sensitive, for example a model predicting when a child should be taken off breathing support (Data Study Group Team 2020), the best possible predictions, evaluated to the highest standard, are a necessity. In other fields of predictive modelling, machine learning has made incredible breakthroughs (such as AlphaFold), therefore applying machine learning to survival analysis is a natural step in the evolution of an important field.

Survival analysis is the field of Statistics focusing on modelling the distribution of an event, which may mean the time until the event takes place, the risk of the event happening, the probability of the event occurring at a single time, or the event's underlying probability distribution. Survival analysis ('survival') is a unique field of study in Statistics as it includes the added difficulty of 'censoring'. Censoring is best described through example: a study is conducted to determine the mortality rate of a group of patients after diagnoses with a particular disease. If a patient dies during this study then their outcome is 'death' and their time of death can be recorded. However if a patient drops-out of the study before they die, then their time of death (though guaranteed to occur) is unknown and the only available information is the time at which they left the study. This patient is now said to be *censored* at the time they drop out. The censoring mechanism allows as much outcome information (time and event) to be captured as possible for all patients (observations).

Machine learning (ML) is the field of Statistics primarily concerned with building models to either predict outputs from inputs or to learn relationships from data (Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001; James et al. 2013). This book is limited to the former case, or

more specifically supervised learning, as this is the field in which the vast majority of survival problems live. Relative to other areas of supervised learning, development in survival analysis has been slow – the majority of developments in machine learning for survival analysis have only been in the past decade (see chapters (?@sec-review)-(Chapter 5)). This appears to have resulted in less interest in the development of machine learning survival models (?@sec-review), less rigour in the evaluation of such models (Chapter 5), and fewer off-shelf/open-source implementations (R. Sonabend et al. 2021). This book seeks to set the foundations for clear workflows, good practice, and precise results for ‘machine learning survival analysis’.

---

## 1.1 Why is this book needed?

Firstly, whilst there are many books dedicated to regression and classification as machine learning problems (the ‘bibles’ of machine learning focus entirely on regression and classification only (Bishop 2006; Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001; James et al. 2013)), there is a deficit of books covering the survival analysis setting. By writing this book we hope to fill this gap and enable more practitioners to use cutting-edge methods in survival analysis. Survival analysis has important applications in healthcare, finance, engineering and more, all fields that directly impact upon individual lives on a day-to-day basis, and should perhaps be considered as important as classification and regression. The result of this gap in interest, is the erroneous assumption that one field can be directly applied to another. For example there is evidence of researchers treating censoring as a nuisance to be ignored and using regression models instead (Schwarzer, Vach, and Schumacher 2000). Censoring is indeed a challenge and may contribute to making survival analysis less accessible than other fields, but this need not be the case; a clear unification of terminology and presentation of methods may help make ‘machine learning survival analysis’ more accessible. Added accessibility could lead to more academics (and non-academics) engaging with the field and promoting good standards of practice, as well as developing more novel models and measures.

Where survival models have been developed, these have skewed towards ‘ranking models’, which predict the relative risk of an event occurring (Section 4.3). In many applications these predictions are sufficient, for example in randomised control trials if assessing the increased/decreased risk of an event after treatment. However, there are many use-cases where predicting an individual’s survival probability distribution is required. Take, for example, an engineer calculating the lifetime of a plane’s engine.<sup>1</sup> There are three important reasons to replace a jet engine at the optimal time:

- financial: jet engines are very expensive and replacing one sooner than required is a waste of money;
- environmental: an engine being replaced too early is a waste of potential usage;
- safety: if the engine is replaced too late then there is a risk to passengers.

Now consider examples for the three possible ‘prediction types’ the engineer can make:

- i. A ‘relative risk prediction’: This engine is twice as likely to fail as another.
- ii. A ‘survival time prediction’: The engine is expected to fail in 30 days.

---

<sup>1</sup>In this engineering context, survival analysis is usually referred to as reliability analysis.

- iii. A ‘survival distribution prediction’: The lifetime of the engine is distributed according to the probability distribution  $\zeta$ .

The first prediction type is not useful as the underlying relative risk may be unknown and the engineer is concerned with the individual lifetime. The second prediction type provides a useful quantity for the engineer to work with however there is no uncertainty captured in this prediction. The third prediction type can capture the uncertainty of failure over the entirety of the positive Reals (though usually only a small subset is possible and useful). With this final prediction type, the engineer can create safe decisions: ‘replace the engine at time  $\tau$ , where  $\tau$  is the time when the predicted probability of survival drops below 60%,  $S(\tau) = 0.6$ ’. There are ethical, economic, and environmental reasons for a good survival distribution prediction and this book considers a distribution prediction to be the most important prediction type.

Evaluating predictions from survival models is of the utmost importance. This is especially important as survival models are often deployed in the public domain, particularly in healthcare. Physical products in healthcare, such as new vaccines, undergo rigorous testing and research in randomised control trials before being publically deployed; the same level of rigour should be expected for the evaluation of survival models that are used in life-and-death situations. Evaluation measures for regression and classification are well-understood with important properties, however survival measures have not undergone the same treatment. For example many survival models are still being evaluated solely with concordance indices that have been repeatedly criticised (Gönen and Heller 2005; Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012).

---

## 1.2 Reproducibility

This book includes simulations and figures generated in R, the code for any figures or experiments in this book are freely available at <https://github.com/RaphaelS1/MLSA> under an MIT licence and all content on this website is available under CC BY 4.0. We use `renv` to manage package versions, you can find our lockfile at <https://github.com/RaphaelS1/MLSA/blob/main/book/renv.lock>.





## Part I

# Survival Analysis and Machine Learning



## 2

---

### *MLSA From Start to Finish*

---

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

 Page coming soon!

**We are working on this page and it will be available soon!**



# 3

## Statistical Learning

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

TODO

- $\mathcal{D}$  - labeled data set with  $n$  observation
- Observations:  $(\mathbf{x}^{(i)}, y^{(i)})$  where  $\mathbf{x}^{(i)} \in \mathcal{X}$  is a  $p$ -dimensional feature vector and  $y^{(i)} \in \mathcal{Y}$  is a label
- Data set:  $\mathcal{D} = ((\mathbf{x}^{(1)}, y^{(1)}), \dots, (\mathbf{x}^{(n)}, y^{(n)}))$
- Assume  $\mathcal{D} \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (\mathbb{P}_{xy})^n$  (unknown distribution)
- ML model:  $f : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^g$  assigning a prediction in  $\mathbb{R}^g$
- ML learners,  $\mathcal{J}$ , configured by hyperparameters  $\lambda \in \Lambda$ , are  $\mathcal{J} : \mathbb{D} \times \Lambda \rightarrow \mathcal{H}, (\mathcal{D}, \lambda) \mapsto \hat{f}$  where  $\mathcal{H}$  is the function space to which a model belongs and  $\hat{f}$  is a trained model with learned hyperparameters  $\hat{\theta} \in \mathcal{H}$ .
- Models are evaluated with loss functions which measure the discrepancy between predictions and true values  $L : \mathcal{Y} \times \mathbb{R}^g \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, (\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}), \mathbf{y}) \mapsto l(\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}), \mathbf{y})$
- To prevent overfitting, models are evaluated on unseen test data to ensure unbiased performance estimation and the generalization error  $GE(\mathcal{J}, \lambda, n_{train}, l) := \lim_{n_{test} \rightarrow \infty} \mathbb{E}_{\mathcal{D}_{train}, \mathcal{D}_{test} \sim \mathbb{P}_{xy}} [l(\mathbf{y}_{test}, \mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{D}_{test}, \mathcal{J}(\mathcal{D}_{train}, \lambda)})]$  where  $\mathbf{F}_{\mathcal{D}_{test}, \mathcal{J}(\mathcal{D}_{train}, \lambda)}$  is the matrix of predictions from a model trained on  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$  and making predictions on  $\mathcal{D}_{test}$ .

### 3.1 Machine Learning

This section begins with a very brief introduction to machine learning and a focus on regression and classification; the survival machine learning task is then introduced (Section 4.4). Of the many fields within machine learning (ML), the scope of this book is narrowed to supervised learning. Supervised learning is the sub-field of ML in which predictions are made for outcomes based on data with observed dependent and independent variables. For example predicting someone's height is a supervised learning problem as data can be collected

for features (independent variables) such as age and sex, and outcome (dependent variable), which is height. Predictive survival analysis problems fall naturally in the supervised learning framework as there are identifiable features and (multiple types of) outcomes.

### 3.1.1 Terminology and Methods

Common supervised learning methods are discussed in a simplified setting with features  $X$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X}$  and outcomes  $Y$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{Y}$ ; usually outcomes are referred to as ‘targets’ (a ‘target for prediction’). Let  $\mathcal{D}_0 = \{(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)\}$  be a (training) dataset where  $(X_i, Y_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, Y)$ . The methods below extend naturally to the survival setting.

#### Strategies and Models

In order to clearly separate between similar objects, several terms for machine learning are now introduced and clearly distinguished.

Let  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$  be the true (but unknown) mapping from the features to outcomes, referred to as the *true prediction functional*. Let  $\mathcal{G}$  be the set of *prediction functionals* such that  $\forall \Upsilon \in \mathcal{G}, \Upsilon : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$ . A *learning* or *fitting algorithm* is defined to be any function of the form  $\mathcal{A} : \mathcal{X}^n \times \mathcal{Y}^n \rightarrow \mathcal{G}$ . The goal of supervised learning is to *learn*  $g$  with a learning algorithm *fit* on (i.e. the input to the algorithm is) training data,  $\hat{g} := \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{D}_{train}) \in \mathcal{G}$ . Note that  $\hat{g}$  may take hyper-parameters that can be set or tuned (see below). The learning algorithm is ‘good’ if  $\hat{g}(X) \approx g(X)$  (see ‘Evaluation’ below).

The learning algorithm is determined by the chosen *learning strategy* and *model*, where a model is a complete specification of a learning strategy including hyper-parameters. These terms are more clearly illustrated by example:

- i. Learning strategy – simple linear regression
- ii. Model –  $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x$  where  $x \in \mathbb{R}$  is a single covariate,  $y \in \mathbb{R}$  is the target, and  $\beta_0, \beta_1 \in \mathbb{R}$  are model coefficients.
- iii. Learning algorithm (model fitting) – Minimise the residual sum of squares:  
 $(\hat{\beta}_0, \hat{\beta}_1) := \operatorname{argmin}_{\beta_0, \beta_1} \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \beta_0 - \beta_1 x_i)^2 \right\}$  for  $(x_i, y_i) \in \mathcal{D}_{train}, i = 1, \dots, n$ .
- iv. Prediction functional –  $\hat{g}(x) = \hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x$

To further illustrate the difference between learning strategy and model, note that the same learning strategy ‘simple linear regression’ could either utilise the model above or instead a model without intercept,  $y = \beta x$ , in which case the learning algorithm and prediction functional would also be modified.

The model in (ii) is called *unfitted* as the model coefficients are unknown and the model cannot be used for prediction. After step (iii) the model is said to be fit to the training data and therefore the model is *fitted*.<sup>1</sup> It is common to refer to the learning algorithm (and associated hyper-parameters) as the unfitted model and to refer to the prediction functional (and associated hyper-parameters) as the fitted model.

<sup>1</sup>The terms ‘fitted’ and ‘unfitted’ are used instead of ‘fit’ and ‘unfit’ to prevent confusion with words such as ‘suitable’ and ‘unsuitable’.

## Evaluation

Models are *evaluated* by evaluation measures called *losses* or *scores*,<sup>2</sup>  $L : \mathcal{Y} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$ . Let  $(X^*, Y^*) \sim (X, Y)$  be test data (i.e. independent of  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ ) and let  $\hat{g} : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$  be a prediction functional fit on  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ , then these evaluation measures determine how closely predictions,  $\hat{g}(X^*)$ , relate to the truth,  $Y^*$ , thereby providing a method for determining if a model is ‘good’.<sup>3</sup>

## Task

A machine learning *task* is a simple mechanism to outline the problem of interest by providing: i) the data specification; ii) the definition of learning; iii) the definition of success (when is a prediction ‘good’?) (Király et al. 2021). All tasks in this paper have the same definitions of learning and success. For (ii), the aim is to learn the true prediction functional,  $g$ , by fitting the learning algorithm on training data,  $\hat{g} := \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{D}_0)$ . For (iii), a predicted functional is considered ‘good’ if the *expected generalization error*,  $\mathbb{E}[L(Y^*, \hat{g}(X^*))]$ , is low, where  $(X^*, Y^*) \sim (X, Y)$  is independent of the training data  $\mathcal{D}_0$ , and  $L$  is some loss that is chosen according to the domain of interest (regression, classification, survival).

## Resampling

Models are *tested* on their ability to make predictions. In order to avoid ‘optimism of training error’ (James et al. 2013) – overconfidence caused by testing the model on training data – models are tested on previously unseen or ‘held-out’ data. *Resampling* is the procedure of splitting one dataset into two or more for separated training and testing. In this paper only two resampling methods are utilised: *holdout* and *cross-validation*. Holdout is the process of splitting a primary dataset into training data for model fitting and testing data for model predicting. This is an efficient method but may not accurately estimate the expected generalisation error for future model performance, instead this is well-estimated by  $K$ -fold cross-validation (KCV) (Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001). In KCV, data is split into  $K \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  ‘folds’ such that  $K - 1$  of the folds are used for model training and the final  $K$ th fold for testing. The testing fold is iterated over all  $K$  folds, so that each at some point is used for testing and then training (though never at the same time). In each iteration the model is fit on the training folds, and predictions are made and evaluated on the testing fold, giving a loss  $L_k := L(\hat{g}(X^k), Y^k)$ , where  $(X^k, Y^k)$  are data from the  $k$ th fold. A final loss is defined by,  $L^* := \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K L_k$ . Commonly  $K = 5$  or  $K = 10$  (Breiman and Spector 1992; Kohavi 1995).

## Model Performance Benchmarking

Whilst *benchmarking* often refers to speed tests, i.e. the time taken to complete an operation, it can also refer to any experiment in which objects (mathematical or computational) are compared. In this report, a benchmark experiment will either refer to the comparison of multiple models’ predictive abilities, or comparison of computational speeds and object sizes for model fitting; which of these will be clear from context.

<sup>2</sup>The term ‘loss’ is usually utilised to refer to evaluation measures to be minimised, whereas ‘scores’ should be maximised, this is returned to in (@sec-eval).

<sup>3</sup>Here evaluation refers specifically to predictive ability; other forms of evaluation and further discussion of the area are provided in (@sec-eval).

### Model Comparison

Models can be analytically compared on how well they make predictions for new data. Model comparison is a complex topic with many open questions (Demšar 2006; Dietterich 1998; Nadeau and Bengio 2003) and as such discussion is limited here. When models are compared on multiple datasets, there is more of a consensus in how to evaluate models (Demšar 2006) and this is expanded on further in (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021). Throughout this book there are small simulation experiments for model comparison on single datasets however as these are primarily intended to aid exposition and not to generalise results, it suffices to compare models with the conservative method of constructing confidence intervals around the sample mean and standard error of the loss when available (Nadeau and Bengio 2003).

### Hyper-Parameters and Tuning

A *hyper-parameter* is a model parameter that can be set by the user, as opposed to coefficients that are estimated as part of model fitting. A hyper-parameter can be set before training, or it can be tuned. *Tuning* is the process of choosing the optimal hyper-parameter value via automation. In the simplest setting, tuning is performed by selecting a range of values for the hyper-parameter(s) and treating each choice (combination) as a different model. For example if tuning the number of trees in a random forest (Section 13.1),  $m_r$ , then a range of values, say 100, 200, 500 are chosen, and three models  $m_{r100}, m_{r200}, m_{r500}$  are benchmarked. The optimal hyper-parameter is given by whichever model is the best performing. *Nested resampling* is a common method to prevent overfitting that could occur from using overlapping data for tuning, training, or testing. Nested resampling is the process of resampling the training set again for tuning.



### 3.1.2 Machine Learning in Classification and Regression

Before introducing machine learning for survival analysis, which is considered ‘non-classical’, the more standard classification and regression set-ups are provided; these are referenced throughout this book.

#### 3.1.2.1 Classification

Classification problems make predictions about categorical (or discrete) events, these may be *deterministic* or *probabilistic*. Deterministic classification predicts which category an observation falls into, whereas probabilistic classification predicts the probability of an observation falling into each category. In this brief introduction only binary single-label classification is discussed, though the multi-label case is considered in ?? In binary classification, there are two possible categories an observation can fall into, usually referred to as the ‘positive’ and ‘negative’ class. For example predicting the probability of death due to a virus is a probabilistic classification task where the ‘positive’ event is death.

A probabilistic prediction is more informative than a deterministic one as it encodes uncertainty about the prediction. For example it is clearly more informative to predict a 70 chance of rain tomorrow instead of simply ‘rain’. Moreover the latter prediction implicitly contains an erroneous assumption of certainty, e.g. ‘it will rain tomorrow’.

##### Classification Task

**Box 3.1.** Let  $(X, Y)$  be random variables t.v.i.  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{Y} = \{0, 1\}$ . Then,

- The probabilistic classification task is the problem of predicting the probability of a single event taking place and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow [0, 1]$ .
- The deterministic classification task is the problem of predicting if a single event takes place and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$ .

The estimated prediction functional  $\hat{g}$  is fit on training data  $\{(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)\} \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, Y)$  and is considered ‘good’ if  $\mathbb{E}[L(Y^*, \hat{g}(X^*))]$  is low, where  $(X^*, Y^*) \sim (X, Y)$  is independent of  $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$  and  $\hat{g}$ .

In the probabilistic case, the prediction  $\hat{g}$  maps to the estimated probability mass function  $\hat{p}_Y$  such that  $\hat{p}_Y(1) = 1 - \hat{p}_Y(0)$ .

#### 3.1.2.2 Regression

A regression prediction is one in which the goal is to predict a continuous outcome from a set of features. For example predicting the time until an event (without censoring) occurs, is a regression problem.

##### Regression Task

**Box 3.2.** Let  $(X, Y)$  be random variables t.v.i.  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . Let  $\mathcal{S} \subset \text{Distr}(\mathcal{Y})$  be a convex set of distributions on  $\mathcal{Y}$ . Then,

- The probabilistic regression task is the problem of predicting a conditional distribution over the Reals and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ .
- The deterministic regression task is the problem of predicting a single continuous value in the Reals and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{Y}$ .

The estimated prediction functional  $\hat{g}$  is fit on training data  $\{(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)\} \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, Y)$

$(X, Y)$  and is considered ‘good’ if  $\mathbb{E}[L(Y^*, \hat{g}(X^*))]$  is low, where  $(X^*, Y^*) \sim (X, Y)$  is independent of  $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$  and  $\hat{g}$ .

Whilst regression can be either probabilistic or deterministic, the latter is much more common and therefore in this book ‘regression’ refers to the deterministic case unless otherwise stated.

# 4

## *Survival Analysis*

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

TODO

- Make sure intro is clear about censoring/truncation and that metrics can't highlight if this is setup wrong - analogously to hypothesis testing not testing the result but hypothesis, p-hacking, etc.
- If measures for right-censoring used in parts of pipelines hard to discern biases if wrong type of measure used
- Same as dependent/independent censoring and measures problem

In their broadest and most basic definitions, survival analysis is the study of temporal data from a given origin until the occurrence of one or more events or 'end-points' (Collett 2014), and machine learning is the study of models and algorithms that learn from data in order to make predictions or find patterns (Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001). Reducing either field to these definitions is ill-advised.

This chapter collects terminology utilised in survival analysis (Section 4.1) and machine learning (Section 3.1) in order that this book can cleanly discuss 'machine learning survival analysis' (Section 4.4). Once the mathematical setting is set up, the book scope is fully presented in (Section 4.2). Whilst the content of this chapter is not novel with respect to either survival analysis or machine learning separately, this does appear to be the first formulation of the survival analysis machine learning 'task' (Király et al. 2021).

### 4.1 Survival Analysis

Survival analysis is the field of Statistics concerned with the analysis of time-to-event data, which consists of covariates, a categorical (often binary) outcome, and the time until this outcome takes place (the 'survival time'). As a motivating example of time-to-event data, say 100 patients are admitted to a COVID-19 ward and for each patient the following

covariate data are collected: age, weight and sex; additionally for each patient the time until death or discharge is recorded. In the time-to-event dataset, which takes a standard tabular form, each of the 100 patients is a row, with columns consisting of age, weight, and sex measurements, as well as the outcome (death or discharge) and the time to outcome.

Survival analysis is distinct from other areas of Statistics due to the incorporation of ‘censoring’, a mechanism for capturing uncertainty around when an event occurs in the real-world. Continuing the above example, if a patient dies of COVID-19 five days after admittance, then their outcome is exactly known: they *died* after five days. Consider now a patient who is discharged after ten days. As death is a guaranteed event they have a true survival time but this may be decades later, therefore they are said to be *censored* at ten days. This is a convenient method to express that the patient survives up to ten days and their survival status at any time after this point is unknown. Censoring is a unique challenge to survival analysis that attempts to incorporate as much information as possible without knowing the true outcome. This is a ‘challenge’ as statistical models usually rely on learning from observed, i.e. known, outcome data; therefore censoring requires special treatment.

Whilst survival analysis occurs in many fields, for example as ‘reliability analysis’ in engineering and ‘duration analysis’ in economics, in this book the term ‘survival’ will always be used. Moreover the following terminology, analogous to a healthcare setting, are employed: survival analysis (or ‘survival’ for short) refers to the field of study; the event of interest is the ‘event’, or ‘death’; an observation that has not experienced an event is ‘censored’ or ‘alive’; and observations are referred to as ‘observations’, ‘subjects’, or ‘patients’.

Some of the biggest challenges in survival analysis stem from an unclear definition of a ‘survival analysis prediction’ and different (sometimes conflicting) common notations. This book attempts to make discussions around survival analysis clearer and more precise by first describing the mathematical setting for survival analysis in (Section 4.1.1) and only then defining the prediction types to consider in (Section 4.3).

#### 4.1.1 Survival Data and Definitions

Survival analysis has a more complicated data setting than other fields as the ‘true’ data generating process is not directly modelled but instead engineered variables are defined to capture observed information. Let,

- $X$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p, p \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  be the generative random variable representing the data *features/covariates/independent variables*.
- $Y$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be the (unobservable) *true survival time*.
- $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  be the (unobservable) *true censoring time*.

It is impossible to fully observe both  $Y$  and  $C$ . This is clear by example: if an observation drops out of a study then their censoring time is observed but their event time is not, whereas if an observation dies then their true censoring time is unknown. Hence, two engineered variables are defined to represent observable outcomes. Let,

- $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  be the *observed outcome time*.
- $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(Y = T) = \mathbb{I}(Y \leq C)$  be the *survival indicator* (also known as the *censoring or event indicator*).<sup>1</sup>

Together  $(T, \Delta)$  is referred to as the *survival outcome* or *survival tuple* and they form the dependent variables. The survival outcome provides a concise mechanism for representing

<sup>1</sup>Indicators are usually named to reflect a positive condition in the function (in this case the event when  $Y = T$ ), but counter to this convention the ‘censoring indicator’ is possibly the most common term.

the time of the *observed* outcome and indicating which outcome (death or censoring) took place.

Now the full generative template for survival analysis is given by  $(X, \Delta, C, Y, T)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{T} \times \mathcal{T} \times \mathcal{T}$  and with  $(X_i, \Delta_i, C_i, Y_i, T_i)$  jointly i.i.d. A *survival dataset* is defined by  $\mathcal{D} = \{(X_1, T_1, \Delta_1), \dots, (X_n, T_n, \Delta_n)\}$  where  $(X_i, T_i, \Delta_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, T, \Delta)$  and  $X_i$  is a  $p$ -vector,  $X_i = (X_{i,1}, \dots, X_{i,p})$ . Though unobservable, the true outcome times are defined by  $(Y_1, C_1), \dots, (Y_n, C_n)$  where  $(Y_i, C_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (Y, C)$ .

- (1) exemplifies a random survival dataset with  $n$  observations (rows) and  $p$  features.

Table 4.1: Theoretical time-to-event dataset.  $(Y, C)$  are ‘hypothetical’ as they can never be directly observed. Rows are individual observations,  $X$  columns are features,  $T$  is observed time-to-event,  $\Delta$  is the censoring indicator, and  $(Y, C)$  are hypothetical true survival and censoring times.

| X        | X        | X        | T        | $\Delta$   | Y        | C        |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|------------|----------|----------|
| $X_{11}$ | $\dots$  | $X_{1p}$ | $T_1$    | $\Delta_1$ | $Y_1$    | $C_1$    |
| $\vdots$ | $\ddots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$   | $\vdots$ | $\vdots$ |
| $X_{n1}$ | $\dots$  | $X_{np}$ | $T_n$    | $\Delta_n$ | $Y_n$    | $C_n$    |

- (2) exemplifies an observed survival dataset with a modified version of the **rats** dataset (Therneau 2015).

Table 4.2: **rats** (Therneau 2015) time-to-event dataset with added hypothetical columns  $(Y, C)$ . Rows are individual observations,  $X$  columns are features,  $T$  is observed time-to-event,  $\Delta$  is the censoring indicator, and  $(Y, C)$  are hypothetical (here arbitrary values dependent on  $(T, \Delta)$ ) true survival and censoring times.

| <b>litter</b><br>( $X_{:,1}$ ) | <b>rx</b> ( $X_{:,2}$ ) | <b>sexF</b> ( $X_{:,3}$ ) | <b>time</b> (T) | <b>status</b><br>( $\Delta$ ) | <b>survTime</b><br>(Y) | <b>censTime</b><br>(C) |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1                              | 1                       | 1                         | 101             | 0                             | 105                    | 101                    |
| 1                              | 0                       | 1                         | 49              | 1                             | 49                     | 55                     |
| 1                              | 0                       | 1                         | 104             | 0                             | 200                    | 104                    |
| 2                              | 1                       | 0                         | 91              | 0                             | 92                     | 91                     |
| 2                              | 0                       | 0                         | 104             | 1                             | 104                    | 104                    |
| 2                              | 0                       | 0                         | 102             | 1                             | 102                    | 120                    |

Both datasets includes two extra columns, on the right of the triple vertical line, which imagine hypothetical data for the unobserved true survival and censoring times.

Finally the following terms are used frequently throughout this report. Let  $(T_i, \Delta_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (T, \Delta), i = 1, \dots, n$ , be random survival outcomes. Then,

- The *set of unique* or *distinct time-points* refers to the set of time-points in which at least one observation dies or is censored,  $\mathcal{U}_O := \{T_i\}_{i \in \{1, \dots, n\}}$ .
- The *set of unique death times* refers to the set of unique time-points in which death (and not censoring) occurred,  $\mathcal{U}_D := \{T_i : \Delta_i = 1\}_{i \in \{1, \dots, n\}}$ .

- The *risk set* at a given time-point,  $\tau$ , is the set of subjects who are known to be alive (not dead or censored) just before that time,  $\mathcal{R}_\tau := \{i : T_i \geq \tau\}$  where  $i$  is a unique row/subject in the data.
- The *number of observations alive* at  $\tau$  is the cardinality of the risk set,  $|\mathcal{R}_\tau|$ , and is denoted by  $n_\tau := \sum_i \mathbb{I}(T_i \geq \tau)$ .
- The *number of observations who die* at  $\tau$  is denoted by  $d_\tau := \sum_i \mathbb{I}(T_i = \tau, \Delta_i = 1)$ .
- The Kaplan-Meier estimate of the average survival function of the training data *survival distribution* is the Kaplan-Meier estimator (Section 11.1.1) fit (Section 3.1.1) on training data  $(T_i, \Delta_i)$  and is denoted by  $\hat{S}_{KM}$ .
- The Kaplan-Meier estimate of the average survival function of the training data *censoring distribution* is the Kaplan-Meier estimator fit on training data  $(T_i, 1 - \Delta_i)$  and is denoted by  $\hat{G}_{KM}$ .

Notation and definitions will be recapped at the start of each chapter for convenience.

#### 4.1.2 Censoring

Censoring is now discussed in more detail and important concepts introduced. Given the survival generating process  $(X, T, \Delta)$  with unobservable  $(Y, C)$ , the event is experienced if  $Y \leq C$  and  $\Delta = 1$  or censored if  $\Delta = 0$ .

#### Censoring ‘Location’ { .unnumbered .unlisted }

Right-censoring is the most common form of censoring in survival models and it occurs either when a patient drops out (but doesn’t experience the event) of the study before the end and thus their outcome is unknown, or if they experience the event at some unknown point after the study end. Formally let  $[\tau_l, \tau_u]$  be the study period for some,  $\tau_l, \tau_u \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . Then right-censoring occurs when either  $Y > \tau_u$  or when  $Y \in [\tau_l, \tau_u]$  and  $C \leq Y$ . In the first case  $T = C = \tau_u$  and censoring is due to the true time of death being unknown as the observation period has finished. In the latter case, a separate censoring event, such as drop-out or another competing risk, is observed.

Left-censoring is a rarer form of censoring and occurs when the event happens at some unknown time before the study start,  $Y < \tau_l$ . Interval-censoring occurs when the event takes place in some interval within the study period, but the exact time of event is unknown. (Figure 4.1) shows a graphical representation of right-censoring.

#### Censoring ‘Dependence’

Censoring is often defined as *uninformative* if  $Y \perp\!\!\!\perp C$  and *informative* otherwise however these definitions can be misleading as the term ‘uninformative’ appears to be imply that censoring is independent of both  $X$  and  $Y$ , and not just  $Y$ . Instead the following more precise definitions are used in this report.

**Definition 4.1** (Censoring). Let  $(X, T, \Delta, Y, C)$  be defined as above, then

- If  $C \perp\!\!\!\perp X$ , censoring is *feature-independent*, otherwise censoring is *feature-dependent*.
- If  $C \perp\!\!\!\perp Y$ , then censoring is *event-independent*, otherwise censoring is *event-dependent*.
- If  $(C \perp\!\!\!\perp Y)|X$ , censoring is conditionally independent of the event given covariates, or *conditionally event-independent*.
- If  $C \perp\!\!\!\perp (X, Y)$  censoring is *uninformative*, otherwise censoring is *informative*.

Non-informative censoring can generally be well-handled by models as true underlying patterns can still be detected and the reason for censoring does not affect model inference



Figure 4.1: Dead and censored subjects (y-axis) over time (x-axis). Black diamonds indicate true death times and white circles indicate censoring times. Vertical line is the study end time. Subjects 1 and 2 die in the study time. Subject 3 is censored in the study and (unknown) dies within the study time. Subject 4 is censored in the study and (unknown) dies after the study. Subject 5 dies after the end of the study.

or predictions. However in the real-world, censoring is rarely non-informative as reasons for drop-out or missingness in outcomes tend to be related to the study of interest. Event-dependent censoring is a tricky case that, if not handled appropriately (by a competing-risks framework), can easily lead to poor model development; the reason for this can be made clear by example: Say a study is interested in predicting the time between relapses of stroke but a patient suffers a brain aneurysm due to some separate neurological condition, then there is a high possibility that a stroke may have occurred if the aneurysm had not. Therefore a survival model is unlikely to distinguish the censoring event (aneurysm) from the event of interest (stroke) and will confuse predictions. In practice, the majority of models and measures assume that censoring is conditionally event-independent and hence censoring can be predicted by the covariates whilst not directly depending on the event. For example if studying the survival time of ill pregnant patients in hospital, then dropping out of the study due to pregnancy is clearly dependent on how many weeks pregnant the patient is when the study starts (for the sake of argument assume no early/late pregnancy due to illness).

### Type I Censoring

Type I and Type II censoring are special-cases of right-censoring, only Type I is discussed in this book as it is more common in simulation experiments. Type I censoring occurs if a study has a set end-date, or maximum survival time, and a patient survives until the end of the study. If survival times are dependent on covariates (i.e. not random) and the study start date is known (or survival times are shifted to the same origin) then Type I censoring will usually be informative as censored patients will be those who survived the longest.

## 4.2 Book Scope

Now that the mathematical setting has been defined, the book scope is provided. For time and relevance the scope of this book is narrowed to the most parsimonious setting that is genuinely useful in modelling real-world scenarios. This is the setting that captures all assumptions made by the majority of proposed survival models and therefore is practical both theoretically and in application. This setting is defined by the following assumptions (with justifications):

- Let  $p$  be the proportion of censored observations in the data, then  $p \in (0, 1)$ . This open interval prevents the case when  $p = 0$ , which is simply a regression problem (Section 3.1.2.2), or the case when  $p = 1$ , in which no useful models exist (as the event never occurs).
- Only right-censoring is observed in the data, no left- or interval-censoring. This accurately reflects most real-world data in which observations that have experienced the event before the study start (left-censoring) are usually not of interest, and close monitoring of patients means that interval-censoring is unlikely in practice. It is acknowledged that left-truncation is a common problem in medical datasets though this is often handled not by models but by data pre-processing, which is not part of the workflow discussed in this book.
- There is only one event of interest, an observation that does not experience this event is censored. This eliminates the ‘competing risk’ setting in which multiple events of interest can be modelled.
- The event can happen at most once. For example the event could be death or initial diagnosis of a disease however cannot be recurrent such as seizure. In the case where the event could theoretically happen multiple times, only the time to one (usually the first) occurrence of the event is modelled.
- The event is guaranteed to happen at least once. This is an assumption implicitly made by all survival models as predictions are for the time until the true event,  $Y$ , and not the observed outcome,  $T$ .

For both the multi-event and recurrent-event cases, simple reductions exist such that these settings can be handled by the models discussed in this paper however this is not discussed further here.

No assumptions are made about whether censoring is dependent on the data but when models and measures make these assumptions, they will be explicitly discussed.

The purpose of any statistical analysis is dependent on the research question. For example techniques are available for data analysis, imputation, exploration, prediction, and more. This book focuses on the predictive setting; other objectives, such as model inspection and data exploration can be achieved post-hoc via interpretable machine learning techniques (Molnar 2019).

Finally, the methods in this book are restricted to frequentist statistics. Bayesian methods are not discussed as the frequentist setting is usually more parsimonious and additionally there are comparatively very few off-shelf implementations of Bayesian survival methods. Despite this, it is noted that Bayesian methods are particularly relevant to the research in this book, which is primarily concerned with uncertainty estimates and predictions of distributions. Therefore, a natural extension to the work in this book would be to fully explore the Bayesian setting.



### 4.3 Survival Prediction Problems

This section continues by defining the survival problem narrowed to the scope described in the previous section. Defining a single ‘survival prediction problem’ (or ‘task’) is important mathematically as conflating survival problems could lead to confused interpretation and evaluation of models. Let  $(X, T, \Delta)$  and  $\mathcal{D}$  be as defined above. A general survival prediction problem is one in which:

- a survival dataset,  $\mathcal{D}$ , is split (Section 3.1.1) for training,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ , and testing,  $\mathcal{D}_{test}$ ;
- a survival model is fit on  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ ; and
- the model predicts some representation of the unknown true survival time,  $Y$ , given  $\mathcal{D}_{test}$ .

The process of ‘fitting’ is model-dependent, and can range from simple maximum likelihood estimation of model coefficients, to complex algorithms. The model fitting process is discussed in more abstract detail in (Section 3.1) and then concrete algorithms are discussed in (?@sec-review). The different survival problems are separated by ‘prediction types’ or ‘prediction problems’, these can also be thought of as predictions of different ‘representations’ of  $Y$ . Four prediction types are discussed in this paper, these may be the only possible survival prediction types and are certainly the most common as identified in chapters (?@sec-review) and (Chapter 5). They are predicting:

- The *relative risk* of an individual experiencing an event – A single continuous ranking.
- The *time until an event* occurs – A single continuous value.
- The *prognostic index* for a model – A single continuous value.
- An individual’s *survival distribution* – A probability distribution.

The first three of these are referred to as *deterministic* problems as they predict a single value whereas the fourth is *probabilistic* and returns a full survival distribution. Definitions of these are expanded on below.

Survival predictions differ from other fields in two respects. Firstly, the predicted outcome,  $Y$ , is a different object than the outcome used for model training,  $(T, \Delta)$ . This differs from, say, regression in which the same object (a single continuous variable) is used for fitting and predicting. Secondly, with the exception of the time-to-event prediction, all other prediction types do not predict  $Y$  but some other related quantity.

Survival prediction problems must be clearly separated as they are inherently incompatible. For example it is not meaningful to compare a relative risk prediction from one observation to a survival distribution of another. Whilst these prediction types are separated above, they can be viewed as special cases of each other. Both (1) and (2) may be viewed as variants of (3); and (1), (2), and (3) can all be derived from (4); this is elaborated on below.

#### Relative Risk/Ranking

This is perhaps the most common survival problem and is defined as predicting a continuous rank for an individual’s ‘relative risk of experiencing the event’. For example, given three patients,  $\{i, j, k\}$ , a relative risk prediction may predict the ‘risk of event’ as  $\{0.1, 0.5, 10\}$  respectively. From these predictions, the following types of conclusions can be drawn:

- Conclusions comparing patients. e.g.  $i$  is at the least risk; the risk of  $j$  is only slightly higher than that of  $i$  but the risk of  $k$  is considerably higher than  $j$ ; the corresponding ranks for  $i, j, k$ , are 1, 2, 3.

- Conclusions comparing risk groups. e.g. thresholding risks at 1.0 places  $i$  and  $j$  in a ‘low-risk’ group and  $k$  in a ‘high-risk’ group

So whilst many important conclusions can be drawn from these predictions, the values themselves have no meaning when not compared to other individuals. Interpretation of these rankings has historically been conflicting in implementation, with some software having the interpretation ‘higher ranking implies higher risk’ whereas others may indicate ‘higher ranking implies lower risk’ ?? In this book, a higher ranking will always imply a higher risk of event (as in the example above).

### Time to Event

Predicting a time to event is the problem of predicting the deterministic survival time of a patient, i.e. the amount of time for which they are predicted to be alive after some given start time. Part of the reason this problem is less common in survival analysis is because it borders regression – a single continuous value is predicted – and survival – the handling of censoring is required – but neither is designed to solve this problem directly. Time-to-event predictions can be seen as a special-case of the ranking problem as an individual with a predicted longer survival time will have a lower overall risk, i.e. if  $t_i, t_j$  and  $r_i, r_j$  are survival time and ranking predictions for patients  $i$  and  $j$  respectively, then  $t_i > t_j \rightarrow r_i < r_j$ .

### Prognostic Index

Given covariates,  $x \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times p}$ , and a vector of model coefficients,  $\beta \in \mathbb{R}^p$ , the linear predictor is defined by  $\eta := x\beta \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . The ‘prognostic index’ is a term that is often used in survival analysis papers that usually refers to some transformation (possibly identity),  $\phi$ , on the linear predictor,  $\phi(\eta)$ . Assuming a predictive function (for survival time, risk, or distribution defining function (see below)) of the form  $g(\varphi)\phi(\eta)$ , for some function  $g$  and variables  $\varphi$  where  $g(\varphi)$  is constant for all observations (e.g. Cox PH (Section 11.1.2)), then predictions of  $\eta$  are a special case of predicting a relative risk, as are predictions of  $\phi(\eta)$  if  $\phi$  is rank preserving. A higher prognostic index may imply a higher or lower risk of event, dependent on the model structure.

### Survival Distribution

Predicting a survival distribution refers specifically to predicting the distribution of an individual patient’s survival time, i.e. modelling the distribution of the event occurring over  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . Therefore this is seen as the probabilistic analogue to the deterministic time-to-event prediction, these definitions are motivated by similar terminology in machine learning regression problems (Section 3.1). The above three prediction types can all be derived from a probabilistic survival distribution prediction (Chapter 15).

A survival distribution is a mathematical object that is estimated by predicting a *representation* of the distribution. Let  $W$  be a continuous random variable t.v.i.  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  with probability density function (pdf),  $f_W : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , and cumulative distribution function (cdf),  $F_W : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow [0, 1]; (\tau) \mapsto P(W \leq \tau)$ . The pdf,  $f_W(\tau)$ , is the likelihood of an observation dying in a small interval around time  $\tau$ , and  $F_W(\tau) = \int_0^\tau f_W(\tau)$  is the probability of an observation being dead at time  $\tau$  (i.e. dying at or before  $\tau$ ). In survival analysis, it is generally more interesting to model the risk of the event taking place or the probability of the patient being alive, leading to other distribution representations of interest.

The survival function is defined as

$$S_W : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow [0, 1]; \quad (\tau) \mapsto P(W \geq \tau) = \int_{\tau}^{\infty} f_W(u) du$$

and so  $S_W(\tau) = 1 - F_W(\tau)$ . This function is known as the survival function as it can be interpreted as the probability that a given individual survives until some point  $\tau \geq 0$ .

Another common representation is the hazard function,

$$h_W : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \quad (\tau) \mapsto \frac{f_W(\tau)}{S_W(\tau)}$$

The hazard function is interpreted as the instantaneous risk of death given that the observation has survived up until that point; note this is not a probability as  $h_W$  can be greater than one.

The cumulative hazard function (chf) can be derived from the hazard function by

$$H_W : \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \quad (\tau) \mapsto \int_0^{\tau} h_W(u) du$$

The cumulative hazard function relates simply to the survival function by

$$H_W(\tau) = \int_0^{\tau} h_W(u) du = \int_0^{\tau} \frac{f_W(u)}{S_W(u)} du = \int_0^{\tau} -\frac{S'_W(u)}{S_W(u)} du = -\log(S_W(\tau))$$

Any of these representations may be predicted conditionally on covariates for an individual by a probabilistic survival distribution prediction. Once a function has been estimated, predictions can be made conditional on the given data. For example if  $n$  survival functions are predicted,  $\hat{S}_1, \dots, \hat{S}_n$ , then  $\hat{S}_i$  is interpreted as the predicted survival function given covariates of observation  $i$ , and analogously for the other representation functions.

## 4.4 Survival Analysis Task

The survival prediction problems identified in (Section 4.3) are now formalised as machine learning tasks.

### Survival Task

**Box 4.1.** Let  $(X, T, \Delta)$  be random variables t.v.i.  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . Let  $\mathcal{S} \subseteq \text{Distr}(\mathcal{T})$  be a convex set of distributions on  $\mathcal{T}$  and let  $\mathcal{R} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . Then,

- The probabilistic survival task is the problem of predicting a conditional distribution over the positive Reals and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$ .
- The deterministic survival task is the problem of predicting a continuous value in the positive Reals and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{T}$ .
- The survival ranking task is specified by predicting a continuous ranking in the Reals and is specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ .

The estimated prediction functional  $\hat{g}$  is fit on training data

$(X_1, T_1, \Delta_1), \dots, (X_n, T_n, \Delta_n) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, T, \Delta)$  and is considered ‘good’ if  $|\mathbb{E}[L(T^*, \Delta^*, \hat{g}(X^*))]|$  is low, where  $(X^*, T^*, \Delta^*) \sim (X, T, \Delta)$  is independent of  $(X_1, T_1, \Delta_1), \dots, (X_n, T_n, \Delta_n)$  and  $\hat{g}$ .

Any other survival prediction type falls within one of these tasks above, for example predicting log-survival time is the deterministic task and predicting prognostic index or linear predictor is the ranking task. Removing the separation between the prognostic index and ranking prediction types is due to them both making predictions over the Reals; their mathematical difference lies in interpretation only. In general, the survival task will assume that  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , and the terms ‘discrete’ or ‘reduced survival task’ will refer to the case when  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{N}_{>0}$ . Unless otherwise specified, the ‘survival task’, will be used to refer to the probabilistic survival task.<sup>2</sup>

### Survival Analysis and Regression

Survival and regression tasks are closely related as can be observed from their respective definitions. Both are specified by  $g : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{S}$  where for probabilistic regression  $\mathcal{S} \subseteq \text{Distr}(\mathbb{R})$  and for survival  $\mathcal{S} \subseteq \text{Distr}(\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0})$ . Furthermore both settings can be viewed to use the same generative process. In the survival setting in which there is no censoring then data is drawn from  $(X, Y)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{T}, \mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  and in regression from  $(X, Y)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{Y} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ , so that the only difference is whether the outcome data ranges over the Reals or positive Reals.

These closely related tasks are discussed in more detail in (Chapter 15), with a particular focus on how the more popular regression setting can be used to solve survival tasks. In (?@sec-review) the models are first introduced in a regression setting and then the adaptations to survival are discussed, which is natural when considering that historically machine learning survival models have been developed by adapting regression models.

---

<sup>2</sup>These definitions are given in the most general case where the time variable is over  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . In practice, all models instead assume time is over  $\mathbb{R}_{>0}$  and any death at  $T_i = 0$  is set to  $T_i = \epsilon$  for some very small  $\epsilon \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ . Analogously for the discrete survival task. This assumption may not reflect reality as a patient could die at the study start however models cannot typically include this information in training.

Part II

**Evaluation**



## *What are Survival Measures?*

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

This chapter studies how to evaluate the predictions arising from the surveyed models in the previous chapter. ‘Model evaluation’ is as vague a phrase as ‘human evaluation’. A human could be evaluated by a series of exams, physical or neurological tests, aesthetics, etc. Likewise a model could be evaluated according to how well it fits to training data, the quality of predictions on new data, the average prediction, and many more methods. This chapter aims to provide a nuanced approach to defining, understanding, and examining model evaluation. Evaluation is defined in further detail in Section 5.1 and throughout this chapter the definition will continue to be refined and specialised to specific sub-types of evaluation, including discrimination (Chapter 6), calibration (Chapter 7), and overall predictive performance (Chapter 8).

Evaluation is a surprising source of disagreement in the literature with some arguing that the process can often be ignored completely (Laan, Polley, and Hubbard 2007; Wolpert 1992). There is a larger divide in survival analysis as many believe that the primary (possibly only) goal is risk prediction (H. C. Chen et al. 2012; Newson 1983; Pencina, D’Agostino, and Song 2012) and thus other forms of evaluation are not required. These strict views can undermine an integral part of the model building and deployment process, and create more division than necessary. This book advocates for strict implementation of model evaluation as a critical part of the model building process as well as in continuous monitoring of deployed models. Without rigorous evaluation, a model cannot be ‘trusted’ to perform well and could be as useless as making random guesses for all predictions. This is critical in survival analysis, which has important applications in healthcare and finance, in these sectors models that have not been evaluated are potentially dangerous.

An infamous example of evaluation going wrong is the Google Flu Trends (GFT) model, which claimed to accurately predict future flu trends but was in fact deemed by many a complete failure as it significantly overestimated all predictions, in some cases doubling the true figures (Lazer et al. 2014). The GFT model was never utilised (at least openly) in policy and as such no lasting harm was created. However it is not hard to imagine the problems that would be caused by such a model if it was utilised and trusted during the time of COVID-19. On a more individual level, as machine learning is increasingly deployed in public sectors, major decisions for patients could become increasingly automated (or at least machine-assisted). Patients should expect their models to be as trained and tested as

their doctors.

This chapter attempts to highlight the purpose and need of evaluation in survival analysis by first giving a high-level overview to evaluation as a concept, then providing a brief review of commonly-used survival measures and finally extensive treatment to scoring rules for evaluation of probabilistic predictions, including novel definitions and proofs for properness of scoring rules. The term *measure* will be used throughout this chapter to refer to functions or ‘metrics’ that quantify some aspect of model evaluation, this should not be confused with a mathematical measure.

## Notation and Terminology

The notation introduced in Chapter 4 is recapped for use in this chapter. The generative template is given by  $(X, T, \Delta, Y, C)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{T} \times \mathcal{T}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , where  $C, Y$  are unobservable,  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$ , and  $\Delta = \mathbb{I}(Y = T)$ . Specific survival data is given by training data,  $\mathcal{D}_{train} = \{(X_1, T_1, \Delta_1), \dots, (X_n, T_n, \Delta_n)\}$  where  $(X_i, T_i, \Delta_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, T, \Delta)$ , and test data,  $\mathcal{D}_{test} = \{(X_1^*, T_1^*, \Delta_1^*), \dots, (X_m^*, T_m^*, \Delta_m^*)\}$  where  $(X_i^*, T_i^*, \Delta_i^*) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, T, \Delta)$ .

## 5.1 Evaluation Overview

### 5.1.1 What is Evaluation?

Evaluation is the process of examining a model’s relationship to data, which may refer to the model’s relationship to training data, i.e. how well the model is ‘fit’ to this data, or the relationship to testing data, i.e. how ‘good’ are the predictions from the model. In this book, only three types of evaluation measure are considered and qualitative definitions of these are given here; more precise definitions appear later in the chapter.

- **Discrimination** – A model’s discriminatory power refers to how well it separates observations that are at a higher or lower risk of event. Therefore discrimination is also sometimes referred to as *separation*. For example, a model with good discrimination will predict that (at a given time) a dead patient has a higher probability of being dead than an alive patient. These measures are the most common in survival and assess relative risk or rank predictions.
- **Calibration** – There is no single agreed upon definition of model calibration, with definitions varying from paper to paper (Collins et al. 2014; F. E. Harrell, Lee, and Mark 1996; Rahman et al. 2017; Van Houwelingen 2000). Generally, a model is said to be well-calibrated if the average predicted values from the model are in some ‘agreement’ (which is specified by the chosen measure) with the average true observed values.
- **Predictive Performance** – A model is said to have good predictive performance (or sometimes ‘predictive accuracy’) if its predictions for new data are ‘close to’ the truth.

These are referred to as measures of predictive ability as they draw conclusions about the ability of the model to make predictions.<sup>1</sup>

Using these definitions as a primary taxonomy for survival measures is problematic as

<sup>1</sup>Measures of predictive ability measure a model’s *ability* to make any form of prediction. Measures of predictive performance measure the *performance* of the predictions. In this section a model’s predictive ability refers to all three of discrimination, calibration, and predictive performance.



without clear definitions there can be significant overlap between model ‘classes’. Instead this book advocates for the same taxonomy as in the previous chapter and categorises measures by the return type that they evaluate: survival time, ranking, or survival distribution.

Goodness-of-fit measures are very briefly discussed in Section 5.3 for completeness, however these are generally out of scope in this book as the vast majority (if any) cannot evaluate machine learning models.

---

## 5.2 Why are Models Evaluated?

A key element of the scientific method is experiments and validation. In the usual workflow of the scientific method:

- a hypothesis is proposed;
- predictions are made; and
- experiments are performed to test the hypothesis based on these predictions.

For statistical models the same principles are upheld:

- i. a model is proposed (by manual or automated selection with possible tuning);
- ii. predictions are made either internally (cross-validation) or externally (held-out data); and
- iii. validation is performed on these predictions in order to infer something about the model’s performance.

The model can then be considered ‘good’ or ‘bad’ and either deployed, adjusted, or discarded. As these are models that are run on a computer (as opposed to experiments in the real-world), the process from fitting to validating is relatively quick and as such multiple proposed models can be evaluated and compared at the same time. This provides two key use-cases for evaluation:

- i. demonstrating model performance; and
- ii. model comparison/selection.

Resistance to model evaluation can be found in the machine learning community. One such example are proponents of inhomogeneous ensemble methods, which combine predictions from multiple different models into a single prediction. The arguments for these models are that:

- i. model evaluation can never be precise enough, or strong enough guarantees cannot be given (Jiao and Du 2016); and
- ii. ensemble methods can guarantee a better performance than the individual component models and therefore evaluation of the components is not required.

For example, ‘super learners’ (Laan, Polley, and Hubbard 2007) are a class of such model and claim<sup>2</sup> to guarantee that a super learner will always perform as well as, if not better, than its component models: ‘...the super learner framework allows a researcher to try many

---

<sup>2</sup>Testing this claim is tangential so for now will be assumed true.

prediction algorithms...knowing that the final combined super learner fit will either be the best fit or near the best fit” (Polley and Van Der Laan 2010). This has three problems, it:

- i. assumes that researchers will only fit sensible prediction algorithms;
- ii. advocates for complex ensemble models instead of transparent and parsimonious ones; and
- iii. assumes that a super learner is guaranteed to be the (near) ‘best fit’, which actively discourages simpler models being tested separately.

Each of these problems can be resolved by researchers only fitting sensible models and opting for an Occam’s Razor approach where inhomogeneous ensemble methods are used only if they outperform simpler models, thus requiring validation to test this.

By the parsimony principle, if two models have the same predictive performance (within some degree of confidence), then the simpler and more transparent model is preferred. Even a very slight gain in predictive performance could be outweighed by a large increase to complexity. All models, whether simple or complex, should be critically compared to many alternatives. At the very least a model should be compared to a baseline (Section 8.0.5.1) as many performance measures are uninterpretable without a point of comparison (Gressmann et al. 2018).

### 5.2.1 How are Models Evaluated?

The process of evaluation in machine learning is briefly given as a key method in Section 3.1 and relevant parts are repeated here. The evaluation process itself is a simple application of a suitable mathematical function to predictions and true data. Let  $L$  be some evaluation measure and for now assume  $L$  is a measure evaluating deterministic predictions (the following generalises to other types trivially). A model will either be evaluated on each prediction separately, in which case  $L : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  or the measure is calculated for all predictions simultaneously, in which case  $L : \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}^m \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$ . Specifically the loss parameters are observed (true) outcomes,  $Y$ , and predictions of this outcome,  $\hat{Y}$ .  $L$  is usually referred to as a *loss* when  $L$  should be minimised for optimal prediction, whereas a *score* is the term given when  $L$  should be maximised.

All evaluation measures discussed in this book are out-of-sample measures and therefore evaluation takes place after the model makes predictions on held-out test data.

Specific choices for  $L$  are now reviewed.

---

## 5.3 In-Sample Measures

In-sample measures are not examined in this book as no in-sample measures could be found that are applicable to all machine learning methods and therefore are out of scope for this book. Instead, the interested reader is referred to the papers and references listed below:

### Residuals

For discussion about model residuals, refer to texts on survival modelling fitting and goodness-of-fit such as:

- Collett (2014)
- Hosmer Jr, Lemeshow, and May (2011)

Both provide a comprehensive overview to model residuals for semi- and fully-parametric low-complexity survival models.

### $R^2$ measures

$R^2$  type measures have been the focus of several reviews and surveys, in particular the following are recommended:

- Choodari-Oskoei, Royston, and Parmar (2012a) — For a comprehensive review and simulation study of  $R^2$  type measures
- Kent and O’Quigley (1988) — Defines the commonly utilised Kent and O’Quigley  $R^2$  measure
- Royston and Sauerbrei (2004) — Defines the commonly utilised Royston and Sauerbrei  $R^2$  measure

### Likelihood and Information Criteria

Measures of likelihood and information criteria (e.g. AIC, BIC) are commonly utilised in in-sample model comparison of low-complexity survival models though in general are harder (if not impossible) to compute on ML alternatives.

These criterion are originally defined in:

- Akaike (1974) — For the introduction of the AIC
- Schwarz (1978) — For the introduction of the BIC

These are discussed for survival analysis in:

- Volinsky and Raftery (2000) — For discussion on the BIC for survival models.
- HURVICH and TSAI (1989) — Definition of corrected  $AIC$  for survival models,  $AIC_C$
- Liang and Zou (2008) — ‘Improved’ AIC for survival models.



## Evaluating Continuous Rankings

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

The next category of survival measures assess predictive performance via discrimination for the evaluation of continuous ranking predictions. Assessment of continuous rankings are also possible by measures of calibration however few methods could be found that generalised to all (not just PH) model forms. Therefore this section exclusively discusses measures of discrimination. First time-independent concordance indices (Section 6.0.1) are discussed and then time-dependent AUCs (Section 6.0.2).

Measures of discrimination identify how well a model can separate patients into different risk groups. A model has perfect discrimination if it correctly predicts that patient  $i$  is at higher risk of death than patient  $j$  if patient  $i$  dies first. This risk of death is derived from the ranking prediction type. All discrimination measures are ranking measures, which means that the exact predicted value is irrelevant, only its relative ordering is required. For example given predictions  $\{100, 2, 299.3\}$ , only their rankings,  $\{2, 1, 3\}$ , are used by measures of discrimination.

### 6.0.1 Concordance Indices

The simplest form of discrimination measures are concordance indices, which in general measure the proportion of cases in which the model correctly separates a pair of observations into ‘low’ and ‘high’ risk.

**Definition 6.1** (Concordance). Let  $(i, j)$  be a pair of observations with outcomes  $\{(t_i, \delta_i), (t_j, \delta_j)\} \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (T, \Delta)$  and let  $y_i, y_j \in \mathbb{R}$  be their respective risk predictions. Then  $(i, j)$  are called (F. E. J. Harrell et al. 1984; F. E. Harrell, Califf, and Pryor 1982):

- *Comparable* if  $t_i < t_j$  and  $\delta_i = 1$ ;
- *Concordant* if  $y_i > y_j$ .<sup>1</sup>

A concordance index (C-index) is a weighted proportion of the number of concordant pairs over the number of comparable pairs. As such, a C-index value is between  $[0, 1]$  with 1

<sup>1</sup>Recall (Section 4.3) this book defines the risk ranking such that a higher value implies higher risk of death and so a pair is concordant if  $\mathbb{I}(t_i < t_j, y_i > y_j)$ , whereas this would be  $\mathbb{I}(t_i < t_j, y_i < y_j)$  if a higher value implied a lower risk of death.

indicating perfect separation, 0.5 indicating no separation, and 0 being separation in the ‘wrong direction’, i.e. all high risk patients being ranked lower than all low risk patients. Concordance measures may either be reported as a value in  $[0, 1]$ , a percentage, or as ‘discriminatory power’. Discriminatory power refers to the percentage improvement of a model’s discrimination above the baseline value of 0.5. For example if a model has a concordance of 0.8 then its discriminatory power is  $(0.8 - 0.5)/0.5 = 60$ . This representation of discrimination provides more information by encoding the model’s improvement over some baseline although is often confused with reporting concordance as a percentage (e.g. reporting a concordance of 0.8 as 80%).

The most common concordance indices can be expressed as a general measure.

**Definition 6.2** (C-index). Let  $\mathcal{T}^m \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{>0}^m$ ,  $y = y_1, \dots, y_m$ ,  $t = t_1, \dots, t_m$ ,  $\delta = \delta_1, \dots, \delta_m$ , and let  $W$  be a weighting function. Then, the *survival concordance index* is defined by,

$$C : \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathcal{T}^m \times \{0, 1\}^m \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \rightarrow [0, 1];$$

$$(y, t, \delta | \tau) \mapsto \frac{\sum_{i \neq j} W(t_i) \mathbb{I}(t_i < t_j, y_i > y_j, t_i < \tau) \delta_i}{\sum_{i \neq j} W(t_i) \mathbb{I}(t_i < t_j, t_i < \tau) \delta_i}$$

for some cut-off time  $\tau$ .

The choice of  $W$  specifies a particular evaluation measure (see below). To evaluate the discrimination of a prediction functional,  $\hat{g}$ , with predicted rankings from the model,  $r = r_1, \dots, r_m$ , the concordance is calculated as  $\setminus C(r, (T_1^*, \dots, T_m^*), (\Delta_1^*, \dots, \Delta_m^*) | \tau)$  for some choice of  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . The use of the cut-off  $\tau$  mitigates against decreased sample size over time due to the removal of censored observations. There are multiple methods for dealing with tied times but in practice a value of 0.5 is usually taken when  $t_i = t_j$  (Therneau and Atkinson 2020). The following weights have been proposed for the concordance index (Therneau and Atkinson 2020):

- $W(t_i) = 1$  – This is Harrell’s concordance index,  $C_H$  (F. E. J. Harrell et al. 1984; F. E. Harrell, Califf, and Pryor 1982), which is widely accepted to be the most common survival measure (Collins et al. 2014; Gönen and Heller 2005; Rahman et al. 2017). There is no cut-off in the original definition of  $C_H$  ( $\tau = \infty$ ).
- $W(t_i) = [\hat{G}_{KM}(t_i)]^{-2}$  – This is Uno’s C,  $C_U$  (Uno et al. 2011).  $\hat{G}_{KM}$  is the Kaplan-Meier estimate of the survival function of the censoring distribution fit on training data. This is referred to as an Inverse Probability of Censoring Weighted (IPCW) measure as the estimated censoring distribution is utilised to weight the measure in order to compensate for removed censored observations.
- $W(t_i) = [\hat{G}_{KM}(t_i)]^{-1}$
- $W(t_i) = \hat{S}_{KM}(t_i)$ .  $\hat{S}_{KM}$  is the Kaplan-Meier estimator of the survival distribution.
- $W(t_i) = \hat{S}_{KM}(t_i) / \hat{G}_{KM}(t_i)$

All methods assume that censoring is conditionally-independent of the event given the features (Section 4.1.2), otherwise weighting by  $\hat{S}_{KM}$  or  $\hat{G}_{KM}$  would not be applicable. It is assumed here that  $\hat{S}_{KM}$  and  $\hat{G}_{KM}$  are estimated on the training data and not the testing data (though the latter is often seen in implementation (Therneau 2015)).

All concordance indices are highly transparent and accessible, with many off-shelf implementations. With respect to performance, Choodari-Oskooei *et al.* (2012) (Choodari-Oskooei,

Royston, and Parmar 2012a) define a measure as performant if it is:<sup>2</sup>

- i. independent of censoring;
- ii. interpretable; and
- iii. robust against outliers.

This second property is already covered by ‘transparency’. The third property is guaranteed for all measures of concordance, which are ranking measures; all outliers are removed once ranks are applied to predictions. Therefore the first property, ‘a measure that is the least affected by the amount of censoring is generally preferred’ (Choodari-Oskooei, Royston, and Parmar 2012a), is now considered.

Several papers have shown that  $C_H$  is affected by the presence of censoring (Koziol and Jia 2009; Pencina, D’Agostino, and Song 2012; Royston and Altman 2013; Uno et al. 2011) as the measure ignores pairs in which the shorter survival time is censored. Despite this,  $C_H$  is still the most widely utilised measure and moreover if a suitable cut-off  $\tau$  is chosen, then all these weightings perform very similarly (Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012).

Measures that utilise other weightings have been demonstrated to be less affected by censoring than  $C_H$  (Rahman et al. 2017). However if a poor choice is selected for  $\tau$  then IPCW measures (which include  $\hat{G}_{KM}$  in the weighting) can be highly unstable (Rahman et al. 2017). For example, the variance of  $C_U$  has been shown to drastically increase more than other measures with increased censoring (Schmid and Potapov 2012).

None of these measures are perfect and all have been shown to be affected to some extent by censoring (Schmid and Potapov 2012), which can lead to both under-confidence and over-confidence in the model’s discriminatory ability. For example,  $C_U$  has been observed to report values as low as 0.2 when the ‘true estimate’ was 0.6 (Schmid and Potapov 2012). Therefore interpreting a value from these measures can be very difficult, for example naively reporting a concordance of 60% when  $C_H = 0.6$  would be incorrect as this value may mean very different things for different amounts of censoring. Whilst interpreting these measures may be difficult, it is not impossible as all these estimators tend to produce values around a similar range (Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012). Therefore this book advocates for multiple concordance indices being reported alongside expert interpretation that takes into account sample size and censoring proportions (Schmid and Potapov 2012) as well as ‘risk profiles’ (how at risk patients are) (Rahman et al. 2017).

For within-study model comparison, instability from censoring is not of concern as the measure will be affected equally across all models; though interpretation remains difficult. However a concordance from one study cannot be compared to that from another if the datasets differ greatly in the proportion of censoring. Future research could consider more robust concordance indices that can provide greater ease of interpretation.

As well as the concordance indices discussed here, another prominent alternative was derived by Gonen and Heller (2005) (Gonen and Heller 2005). However as this is only applicable to the Cox PH it is out of scope for this book, which is primarily concerned with generalisable measures for model comparison.

In simulation experiments, the concordance indices that tended to perform ‘better’ were those based on AUC-type measures, these are now discussed.

---

<sup>2</sup>This paper refers specifically to measures of explained variation and therefore only the properties that generalise to all measures are included here.

### 6.0.2 AUC Measures

AUC, or AUROC, measures calculate the Area Under the Receiver Operating Characteristic (ROC) Curve, which is a plot of the *sensitivity* (or true positive rate (TPR)) against  $1 - \textit{specificity}$  (or true negative rate (TNR)) at varying thresholds (described below) for the predicted probability (or risk) of event. Figure 6.1 visualises ROC curves for two classification models. The blue line is a featureless baseline that has no discrimination. The red line is a decision tree with better discrimination as it comes closer to the top-left corner.

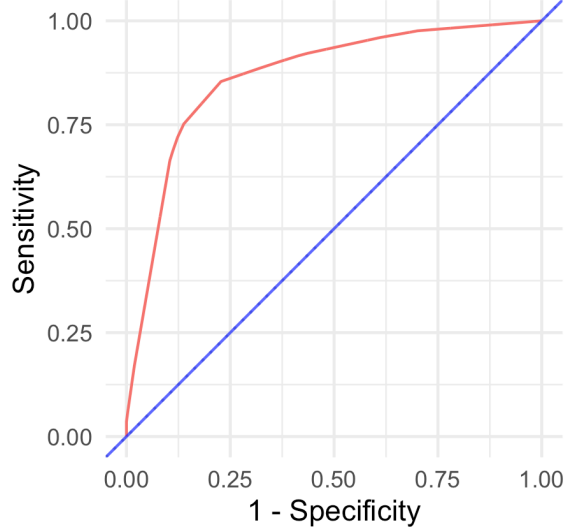


Figure 6.1: ROC Curves for a classification example. Red is a decision tree with good discrimination as it ‘hugs’ the top-left corner. Blue is a featureless baseline with no discrimination as it sits on  $y = x$ .

In a classification setting with no censoring, the AUC has the same interpretation as Harrell’s C (Uno et al. 2011). AUC measures for survival analysis have been developed in order to provide a time-dependent measure of discriminatory ability (Patrick J. Heagerty, Lumley, and Pepe 2000). The proposed concordance indices described above are time-independent, which is useful for producing a single statistic. However, in a survival setting it can reasonably be expected for a model to perform differently over time and therefore time-dependent measures are advantageous. First discussion around computation of TPR and TNR are provided and then how these are incorporated into the AUC equation.

The AUC, TPR, and TNR are derived from the *confusion matrix* in a binary classification setting. Let  $b, \hat{b} \in \{0, 1\}$  be the true and predicted binary outcomes respectively. The confusion matrix is

|               | $b = 1$ | $b = 0$ |
|---------------|---------|---------|
| $\hat{b} = 1$ | TP      | FP      |
| $\hat{b} = 0$ | FN      | TN      |

where  $TN := \sum_i \mathbb{I}(b = 0, \hat{b} = 0)$  is the number of ( $\#$ ) true negatives,  $TP := \sum_i \mathbb{I}(b = 1, \hat{b} = 1)$  is  $\#$  true positives,  $FP := \sum_i \mathbb{I}(b = 0, \hat{b} = 1)$  is  $\#$  false positives, and  $FN := \sum_i \mathbb{I}(b =$



$1, \hat{b} = 0$ ) is  $\#$  false negatives. From these are derived

$$TPR := \frac{TP}{TP + FN} \quad (6.1)$$

$$TNR := \frac{TN}{TN + FP} \quad (6.2)$$

In classification, a probabilistic prediction of an event can simply be *thresholded* (or ‘bina-  
rised’) to obtain a deterministic prediction. For a predicted  $\hat{p} := \hat{P}(b = 1)$ , and threshold  
 $\alpha$ , the thresholded binary prediction is given by  $\hat{b} := \mathbb{I}(\hat{p} > \alpha)$ . In survival analysis, this is  
complicated as either models only predict a continuous ranking (and not a probability of  
death), or a full survival distribution, which implies that the probability of death changes  
over time; it is the first of these that is utilised in AUC measures. Two primary methods  
for doing so have emerged, the first is to use an IPCW method to weight the thresholded  
linear predictor by an estimated censoring distribution at a given time, the second is to first  
classify cases and controls then compute estimators based on these classes. All measures of  
TPR, TNR and AUC are in the range  $[0, 1]$  with larger values preferred.

Weighting the linear predictor was proposed by Uno *et al.* (2007) (Uno et al. 2007) and  
provides a method for estimating TPR and TNR via

$$TPR_U : \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^m \times \{0, 1\}^m \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1];$$

$$(\hat{\eta}, t, \delta | \tau, \alpha) \mapsto \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m \delta_i \mathbb{I}(k(\hat{\eta}_i) > \alpha, t_i \leq \tau) [\hat{G}_{KM}(t_i)]^{-1}}{\sum_{i=1}^m \delta_i \mathbb{I}(t_i \leq \tau) [\hat{G}_{KM}(t_i)]^{-1}}$$

and

$$TNR_U : \mathbb{R}^m \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^m \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow [0, 1];$$

$$(\hat{\eta}, t | \tau, \alpha) \mapsto \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m \mathbb{I}(k(\hat{\eta}_i) \leq \alpha, t_i > \tau)}{\sum_{i=1}^m \mathbb{I}(t_i > \tau)}$$

where  $\tau$  is the time at which to evaluate the measure,  $\alpha$  is a cut-off for the linear predictor,  
and  $k$  is a known, strictly increasing, differentiable function.  $k$  is chosen depending on the  
model choice, for example if the fitted model is PH then  $k(x) = 1 - \exp(-\exp(x))$  (Uno et  
al. 2007). Similarities can be drawn between these equations and Uno’s concordance index,  
in particular the use of IPCW. Censoring is again assumed to be at least random once  
conditioned on features. Plotting  $TPR_U$  against  $1 - TNR_U$  for varying values of  $\alpha$  provides  
the ROC.

The second method, which appears to be more prominent in the literature, is derived from  
Heagerty and Zheng (2005) (Patrick J. Heagerty and Zheng 2005). They define four distinct  
classes, in which observations are split into controls and cases.

An observation is a *case* at a given time-point if they are dead, otherwise they are a *control*.  
These definitions imply that all observations begin as controls and (hypothetically) become  
cases over time. Cases are then split into *incident* or *cumulative* and controls are split into  
*static* or *dynamic*. The choice between modelling static or dynamic controls is dependent on  
the question of interest. Modelling static controls implies that a ‘subject does not change  
disease status’ (Patrick J. Heagerty and Zheng 2005), and few methods have been developed

for this setting (Kamarudin, Cox, and Kolamunnage-Dona 2017), as such the focus here is on *dynamic* controls. The incident/cumulative cases choice is discussed in more detail below.<sup>3</sup>

The TNR for dynamic cases is defined as

$$TNR_D(y, N|\alpha, \tau) = P(y_i \leq \alpha | N_i(\tau) = 0)$$

where  $y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$  is some deterministic prediction and  $N(\tau)$  is a count of the number of events in  $[0, \tau)$ . Heagerty and Zheng further specify  $y$  to be the predicted linear predictor  $\hat{\eta}$ . Cumulative/dynamic and incident/dynamic measures are available in software packages ‘off-shelf’, these are respectively defined by

$$TPR_C(y, N|\alpha, \tau) = P(y_i > \alpha | N_i(\tau) = 1)$$

and

$$TPR_I(y, N|\alpha, \tau) = P(y_i > \alpha | dN_i(\tau) = 1)$$

where  $dN_i(\tau) = N_i(\tau) - N_i(\tau-)$ . Practical estimation of these quantities is not discussed here.

The choice between the incident/dynamic (I/D) and cumulative/dynamic (C/D) measures primarily relates to the use-case. The C/D measures are preferred if a specific time-point is of interest (Patrick J. Heagerty and Zheng 2005) and is implemented in several applications for this purpose (Kamarudin, Cox, and Kolamunnage-Dona 2017). The I/D measures are preferred when the true survival time is known and discrimination is desired at the given event time (Patrick J. Heagerty and Zheng 2005).

Defining a time-specific AUC is now possible with

$$AUC(y, N|\tau) = \int_0^1 TPR(y, N|1 - TNR^{-1}(p|\tau), \tau) dp$$

Finally, integrating over all time-points produces a time-dependent AUC and as usual a cut-off is applied for the upper limit,

$$AUC^*(y, N|\tau^*) = \int_0^{\tau^*} AUC(y, N|\tau) \frac{2\hat{p}_{KM}(\tau)\hat{S}_{KM}(\tau)}{1 - \hat{S}_{KM}^2(\tau^*)} d\tau$$

where  $\hat{S}_{KM}, \hat{p}_{KM}$  are survival and mass functions estimated with a Kaplan-Meier model on training data.

Since Heagerty and Zheng’s paper, other methods for calculating the time-dependent AUC have been devised, including by Chambless and Diao (Chambless and Diao 2006), Song and Zhou (Song and Zhou 2008), and Hung and Chiang (Hung and Chiang 2010). These either stem from the Heagerty and Zheng paper or ignore the case/control distinction and derive the AUC via different estimation methods of TPR and TNR. Blanche *et al.* (2012) (Blanche, Latouche, and Viallon 2012) surveyed these and concluded ‘regarding the choice

<sup>3</sup>All measures discussed in this section evaluate model discrimination from ‘markers’, which may be a *predictive* marker (model predictions) or a *prognostic* marker (a single covariate). This section always defines a marker as a ranking prediction, which is valid for all measures discussed here with the exception of one given at the end.

of the retained definition for cases and controls, no clear guidance has really emerged in the literature’, but agree with Heagerty and Zeng on the use of C/D for clinical trials and I/D for ‘pure’ evaluation of the marker. Blanche *et al.* (2013) (Blanche, Dartigues, and Jacqmin-Gadda 2013) published a survey of C/D AUC measures with an emphasis on non-parametric estimators with marker-dependent censoring, including their own Conditional IPCW (CIPCW) AUC,

$$AUC_B(y, t, \delta, \hat{G}|\tau) = \frac{\sum_{i \neq j} \mathbb{I}(y_i > y_j) \mathbb{I}(t_i \leq \tau, t_j > \tau) \frac{\delta_i}{m^2 \hat{G}(t_i|y_i) \hat{G}(\tau|y_j)}}{\left( \sum_{i=1}^m \mathbb{I}(t_i \leq \tau) \frac{\delta_i}{m \hat{G}(t_i|y_i)} \right) \left( \sum_{j=1}^m \mathbb{I}(t_j > \tau) \frac{1}{m \hat{G}(\tau|y_j)} \right)}$$

where  $t = (t_1, \dots, t_m)$ , and  $\hat{G}$  is the Akritas (Akritas 1994) estimator of the censoring distribution (Section 11.1.1). It can be shown that setting the  $\lambda$  parameter of the Akritas estimator to 1 results in the IPCW estimators (Blanche, Dartigues, and Jacqmin-Gadda 2013). However unlike the previous measures in which a deterministic prediction can be substituted for the marker, this is not valid for this estimator and as such this cannot be used for predictions. This is clear from the weights,  $\hat{G}(t|y)$ , in the equation which are dependent on the prediction itself. The purpose of the CIPCW method is to adapt the IPCW weights to be conditioned on the data covariates, which is not the case when  $y$  is a predictive marker. Hence the following adaptation is considered instead,

$$AUC_B^*(y, x, t, \delta, \hat{G}|\tau) = \frac{\sum_{i \neq j} \mathbb{I}(y_i > y_j) \mathbb{I}(t_i \leq \tau, t_j > \tau) \frac{\delta_i}{m^2 \hat{G}(t_i|x_i) \hat{G}(\tau|x_j)}}{\left( \sum_{i=1}^m \mathbb{I}(t_i \leq \tau) \frac{\delta_i}{m \hat{G}(t_i|x_i)} \right) \left( \sum_{j=1}^m \mathbb{I}(t_j > \tau) \frac{1}{m \hat{G}(\tau|x_j)} \right)}$$

where  $x$  are random covariates (possibly from a separate training dataset).

AUC measures are less transparent and less accessible than the simpler time-independent concordance indices, only the **survAUC** (Potapov, Adler, and Schmid 2012) package could be found that implements these measures. For performance, reviews of these measures have produced (sometimes markedly) different results (Blanche, Latouche, and Viallon 2012; Li, Greene, and Hu 2018; Kamarudin, Cox, and Kolamunnage-Dona 2017) with no clear consensus on how and when these measures should be used. The primary advantage of these measures is to extend discrimination metrics to be time-dependent. However it is unclear how to interpret a threshold of a linear predictor and moreover if this is even the ‘correct’ quantity to threshold, especially when survival distribution predictions are the more natural object to evaluate over time. Methods for evaluating these distribution predictions are now discussed.



## *Evaluating Distributions by Calibration Measures*

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

The final discussed measures are for evaluating survival distributions. First measures of calibration are briefly discussed in this section and then extensive treatment is given to scoring rules (Chapter 8).

### **Random Variable and Distribution Notation**

Throughout these next two sections, two different notations are utilised for random variables and distributions. The first is the ‘standard’ notation, for example if  $\zeta$  is a continuous probability distribution and  $X \sim \zeta$  is a random variable, then  $f_X$  is the probability density function of  $X$ . The second notation associates distribution functions directly with the distribution and not the variable. For example if  $\zeta$  is a continuous probability distribution then  $\zeta.f$  is the probability density function of  $\zeta$ . Analogously for the probability mass, cumulative distribution, hazard, cumulative hazard, and survival functions of  $X \sim \zeta$ ,  $p_X/\zeta.p, F_X/\zeta.F, h_X/\zeta.h, H_X/\zeta.H, S_X/\zeta.S$ . This notation provides a clearer separation of probability distributions and random variables, which in turn allows for cleaner proofs involving probability distributions.

### **Measures of Calibration**

Few measures of calibration exist in survival analysis (Rahman et al. 2017) and this is likely due to the meaning of calibration being unclear in this context (Van Houwelingen 2000). This is compounded by the fact that calibration is often evaluated graphically, which can leave room for high subjectivity and thus may be restricted to expert interpretation. For these reasons, measures of calibration are only considered in this book with respect to accessibility and transparency as there is no clear meaning for what makes a calibration measure performant. Many methods of calibration are restricted to calibration and re-calibration of PH models (Demler, Paynter, and Cook 2015; Van Houwelingen 2000), none of these are considered here as they do not generalise to all (or at least many) survival models.

### Point and Probabilistic Calibration

Andres *et al.* (2018) (Andres et al. 2018) derived a taxonomy for calibration measures to separate measures that only evaluate distributions at a single time-point ('1-Calibration') and measures that evaluate distributions at all time-points ('distributional-calibration'). This section will use the same taxonomy but in keeping with machine learning terminology will refer to '1-Calibration' as 'Point Calibration' and 'distributional-calibration' as 'Probabilistic Calibration'.

All measures considered previously can be viewed as 'point' measures as they evaluate predictions at a single point, specifically comparing the predicted linear predictor (more generally relative risk) or survival time to the true time of death. However calibration measures and scoring rules instead evaluate predicted distributions and specifically functions that vary over time, hence it is often of more interest to evaluate these functions at multiple (all if discrete) time-points in order to derive a metric that captures changes over time. For example one may expect probabilistic predictions to be more accurate in the near-future and to steadily worsen as uncertainty increases over time (both mathematical (censoring) and real-world uncertainty), and therefore a measure that only evaluates distributions at a single (possibly early) time-point cannot assess the true variation in the prediction.

Mathematically this difference in measures may be considered as follows: Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a set of distributions over  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ , then a point measure for evaluating distributions is given by,

$$L_1 : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta | \tau) \mapsto g_1(\zeta \cdot \rho(\tau), t, \delta)$$

and a probabilistic measure is given by,

$$L_P : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta | \tau^*) \mapsto \int_0^{\tau^*} g_P(\zeta \cdot \rho(\tau), t, \delta) d\tau$$

or

$$L_P : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathbb{R}_{>0} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta | \tau^*) \mapsto \sum_{\tau=0}^{\tau^*} g_P(\zeta \cdot \rho(\tau), t, \delta)$$

where  $\tau^*$  is some cut-off for the measure to control uncertainty increasing over time,  $\rho$  is usually the survival function but may be any distribution-defining function, and  $g_1, g_P$  are functions corresponding to specific measures (some examples in next two sections). Note that  $\tau$  is an argument (not a free variable) of  $L_1$  as the fixed choice of  $\tau$  is measure-dependent; usually  $\tau = t$ .

Less abstractly, a point-calibration measure will evaluate a function of the predicted distribution at a single time-point whereas a probabilistic measure evaluates the distribution over a range of time-points; in both cases the evaluated quantity is compared to the observed outcome,  $(T^*, \Delta^*)$ .

#### 7.0.1 Point Calibration

Point calibration measures can be further divided into metrics that evaluate calibration at a single time-point (by reduction) and measures that evaluate an entire distribution by only considering the event time. The subtle difference significantly affects conclusions that can be drawn. In the first case, a calibration measure can only draw conclusions at that one

time-point, whereas the second case can draw conclusions about the calibration of the entire distribution.

### 7.0.1.1 Calibration by Reduction

Point calibration measures are implicitly reduction methods as they attempt to evaluate a full distribution based on a single point only. For example given a predicted survival function  $\zeta.S$ , then one could select a time-point  $\tau^*$  and calculate the survival function at this time,  $\zeta.S(\tau^*)$ , probabilistic classification calibration measures can then be utilised. Using this approach one may employ common calibration methods such as the Hosmer–Lemeshow test (Hosmer and Lemeshow 1980). Calibration at a single point in this manner is not particularly useful as a model may be well-calibrated at one time-point and then poorly calibrated at all others (Haider et al. 2020). To overcome this one could perform the Hosmer–Lemeshow test (or any other applicable test) multiple times at different values of  $\tau^* \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ . However doing so is inefficient and can lead to problems with ‘multiple testing’; hence these single-point methods are not considered further.

### 7.0.1.2 Houwelingen’s $\alpha$

Methods that evaluate entire distributions based on a single point may be more useful as conclusions can be drawn at the distribution level. One such method is termed here ‘Houwelingen’s  $\alpha$ ’. van Houwelingen proposed several measures (Van Houwelingen 2000) for calibration but only one generalises to all probabilistic survival models. This method evaluates the predicted cumulative hazard function,  $\zeta_i.H$  (for some predicted distribution  $\zeta_i$ ), by comparing  $\zeta_i.H$  to the ‘true’ hypothetical cumulative hazard,  $H$ . The test statistic,  $H_\alpha$ , is defined by

$$H_\alpha := \frac{\sum_i H_i(T_i^*)}{\sum_i \zeta_i.H(T_i^*)} \approx \frac{\sum_i \Delta_i^*}{\sum_i \zeta_i.H(T_i^*)}$$

where  $\zeta = (\zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_m)$  are predicted distributions and  $\{(T_1^*, \Delta_1^*), \dots, (T_m^*, \Delta_m^*)\} \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (T, \Delta)$  is some test data. The model is therefore well-calibrated if  $H_\alpha = 1$ . This has standard error  $SE(H_\alpha) = \exp(1/\sqrt{\sum_i \Delta_i^*})$ .

The approximate equality is motivated by formulating survival data as a counting process and noting that in this setting the cumulative hazard function can estimate the number of events in a time-period (Hosmer Jr, Lemeshow, and May 2011). No study could be found that utilised  $H_\alpha$  for model comparison, possibly because graphical methods are favoured. This method can infer results about the calibration of an entire model and not just at a single point because the measure is calculated at a meaningful time (the event time) and utilises known results from counting processes to verify if the expected number of deaths equals the observed number of deaths.

However, as with the reduction method, the statistic is derived from a single point (the observed event time) for each individual and thus it is possible that the model is well-calibrated only for making predictions at the event time, but not over the full  $\mathbb{R}_{>0}$  range.

## 7.0.2 Probabilistic Calibration

Unlike other areas of evaluation, graphical methods are favoured in calibration and possibly more so than numerical ones. Graphical methods compare the average predicted distribution to the expected distribution. As the expected distribution is itself unknown, this is often

estimated with the Kaplan-Meier curve.

### 7.0.2.1 Kaplan-Meier Comparison

The simplest graphical comparison compares the average predicted survival curve to the Kaplan-Meier curve estimated on the testing data. Formally, let  $\zeta_1.S, \dots, \zeta_m.S$  be predicted survival functions, then the average predicted survival function is a mixture of these distributions,  $\frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m \zeta_i.S(\tau)$ . Plotting this mixture and the Kaplan-Meier on  $\tau$  vs  $S(\tau)$  allows a visual comparison of how closely these curves align. An example is given in Figure 7.1, the Cox model (CPH) is well-calibrated as it almost perfectly overlaps the Kaplan-Meier estimator, whereas predictions from the poorly-calibrated support vector machine (SVM) are far from this line.

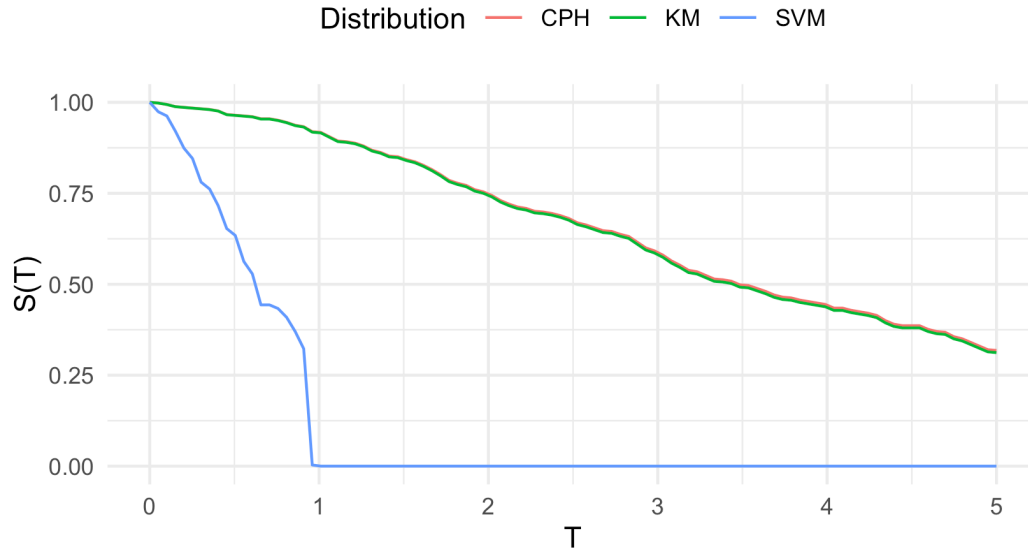


Figure 7.1: Assessing the calibration of a Cox PH (CPH) and SVM (with distribution composition by PH form and Kaplan-Meier (Chapter 15)) by comparing the average survival prediction to a Kaplan-Meier (KM) estimate on the testing dataset. x-axis is time and y-axis is the predicted survival functions evaluated over time. The CPH (red line) is said to be well-calibrated as it almost perfectly overlaps the Kaplan-Meier (green line), whereas the SVM (blue line) is far from this line. Models trained and tested on randomly simulated data from the [simsurv](#) (Brilleman 2019) package in **mlr3proba** (R. Sonabend et al. 2021).

This approach is both simple and interpretable. In the example above one can conclude: on average, the trained Cox PH predicts a distribution just as well as (or very close to) an unconditional estimator using the real test data. A major caveat is that conclusions are at an average *population* level with no individual-level measurement.

In order to capture finer information on a level closer to individuals, calibration can be applied to the predicted relative risks or linear predictor. One such approach is to bin the predictions to create different ‘risk groups’ from low-to-high risk (Royston and Altman 2013). These groups are then plotted against a stratified Kaplan-Meier estimator. This allows for a more nuanced approach to calibration and can simultaneously visualise a model’s discrimination. However this method is far less transparent as it adds even more subjectivity



around how many risk groups to create and how to create them (Royston and Altman 2013).

### 7.0.2.2 D-Calibration

D-Calibration (Andres et al. 2018; Haider et al. 2020) is a very recent method that aims to evaluate a model's calibration at all time-points in a predicted survival distribution. The D-calibration measure is identical to the  $\chi^2$  test-statistic, which is usually written as follows

$$\chi^2 := \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{(O_i - E_i)^2}{E_i}$$

where  $O_1, \dots, O_n$  is the observed number of events in  $n$  groups and  $E_1, \dots, E_n$  is the expected number of events. The statistic is utilised to determine if the underlying distribution of the observed events follows a theoretical/expected distribution.

The D-Calibration measure tests if predictions (observations) from the survival functions of predicted distributions,  $\zeta_1.S, \dots, \zeta_m.S$ , follow the uniform distribution as expected. The following lemma motivates this test.

**Lemma 7.1.** *Let  $\zeta$  be a continuous probability distribution and let  $X \sim \zeta$  be a random variable. Let  $S_X$  be the survival function of  $X$ . Then  $S_X(X)$  follows the standard Uniform distribution:  $S_X(X) \sim \mathcal{U}(0, 1)$ .*

In order to utilise the  $\chi^2$  test (for categorical variables), the  $[0, 1]$  codomain of  $\zeta_i.S$  is cut into  $B$  disjoint contiguous intervals ('bins') over the full range  $[0, 1]$ . Let  $m$  be the total number of observations in the test data. Then assuming a discrete uniform distribution as the theoretical distribution, the expected number of events is  $m/B$ .

The observed number of events in bin  $i$ ,  $O_i$ , is defined as follows: Define  $b_i$  as the set of observations that die in the  $i$ th bin, formally defined by  $b_i := \{j \in 1, \dots, m : \lceil \zeta_j.S(T_j^*)B \rceil = i\}$ , where  $j = 1, \dots, m$  are the indices of the test observations and  $\zeta = (\zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_m)$  are predicted distributions.<sup>1</sup> Then,  $O_i = |b_i|, \forall i \in 1, \dots, B$ .

The D-Calibration measure, or  $\chi^2$  statistic, is now defined by,

$$D_{\chi^2}(\zeta, T^*) := \frac{\sum_{i=1}^B (O_i - \frac{m}{B})^2}{m/B}$$

This measure has several useful properties. Firstly, a  $p$ -value can be derived from  $\chi^2_{B-1}$  to hypothesis test if a single model is 'D-calibrated'. Secondly, as a model is increasingly well-calibrated it holds that  $D_{\chi^2} \rightarrow 0$  (as the number of observed events approach expected events), which motivates utilising the test for model comparison. Thirdly, the theory lends itself very nicely to an intuitive graphical calibration method:

If a model is D-calibrated, i.e. predicted distributions from the model result in a low D-calibration, then one expects,

$$p = \frac{\sum_i \mathbb{I}(T_i^* \leq \zeta_i.F^{-1}(p))}{|T^*|} \quad (7.1)$$

<sup>1</sup>This is a slightly simplified procedure which omits handling of censoring, but this is easily extended in the full algorithm, see Algorithm 2 of Haider *et al.* (2020) (Haider et al. 2020).

where  $p \in [0, 1]$  and  $\zeta_i.F^{-1}$  is the inverse cumulative distribution function of the  $i$ th predicted distribution. In words, if a model is D-calibrated then the number of deaths occurring at or before each quantile should be equal to the quantile itself, for example 50% of deaths should occur before their predicted median survival time. Therefore one can graphically test for D-calibration by plotting  $p$  on the x-axis and the right hand side of Equation 7.1 on the y-axis. A D-calibrated model should result in a straight line on  $x = y$ . This is visualised in Figure 7.2 for the same models as in Figure 7.1. Again the SVM is terribly-calibrated but the CPH is better calibrated. In this case it is clearer that the D-calibration of the CPH is not perfect, especially at higher quantiles. Comparison to  $\chi^2_9$  indicates the CPH is D-calibrated whereas the SVM is not.

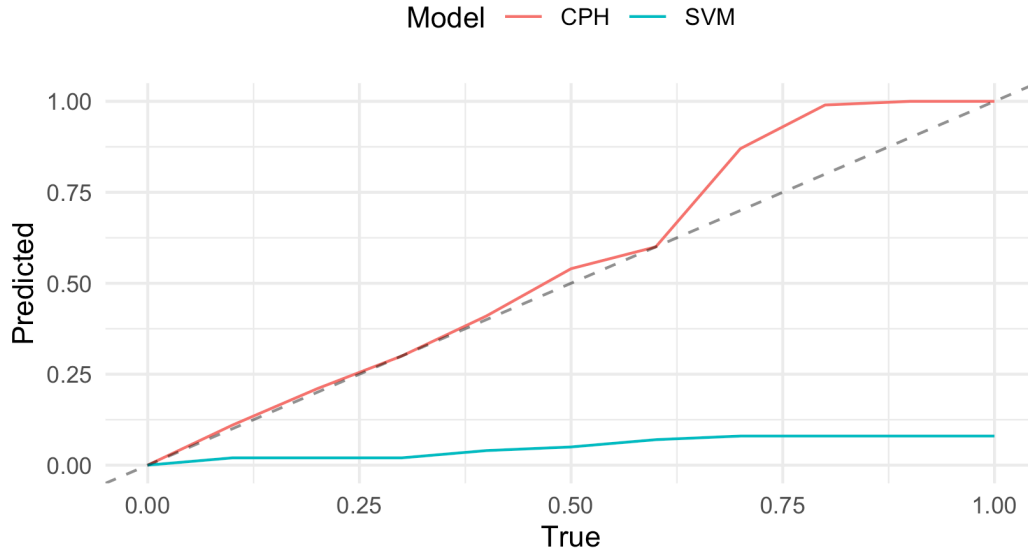


Figure 7.2: Assessing the D-calibration of the Cox PH (CPH) and SVM from the same data as Figure 7.1: models trained and tested on randomly simulated data from the [simSurv](#) (Brilleman 2019) package in **mlr3proba** (R. Sonabend et al. 2021). x-axis are quantiles in  $[0, 1]$  and y-axis are predicted quantiles from the models. The dashed line is  $y = x$ . Again the SVM is terribly calibrated and the CPH is better calibrated as it is closer to  $y = x$ .

### 7.0.2.3 Transparency and Accessibility

It has already been stated that performance cannot be considered for calibration measures however it is unclear if any of these measures are even accessible or transparent as they often require expert interpretation to prevent erroneous conclusions. This is demonstrated by example using the same data and models as in Figure 7.2. The predictions from these models are evaluated with Harrell’s C (Section 6.0.1), the Integrated Graf Score (Section 8.0.3), D-Calibration, and Houwelingen’s  $\alpha$  (Table 7.1). All measures agree that the SVM performs poorly. In contrast, whilst the Cox PH (CPH) is well-calibrated according to both measures, its concordance is quite bad (barely above baseline). Haider *et al.* (Haider et al. 2020) claimed that if a model is D-Calibrated then a ‘patient should believe the prediction from the survival curve’, these results clearly demonstrate otherwise. Measures of calibration alone are clearly not sufficient to determine if a survival curve prediction should be ‘believed’ and should therefore be computed alongside measures of discrimination or scoring rules,

discussed next.

Table 7.1: Comparison of numerical calibration metrics. Same models and data as in Figure 7.1: models trained and tested on randomly simulated data from the [simsurv](#) (Brilleman 2019) package in **mlr3proba**.

| Model          | KM    | CPH   | SVM                   |
|----------------|-------|-------|-----------------------|
| $C_H^1$        | 0.5   | 0.52  | 0.45                  |
| $L_{IGS}^2$    | 0.18  | 0.18  | 0.52                  |
| $H_\alpha^3$   | 0.99  | 1.00  | 15.42                 |
| $D_{\chi^2}^4$ | 2.23* | 7.03* | $1.02 \times 10^{10}$ |

1. Harrell's C (Section 6.0.1). 2. Integrated Graf Score (Section 8.0.3). 3. Houwelingen's  $\alpha$  (Section 7.0.1). 4. D-Calibration statistic. A '\*' indicates the model is D-Calibrated according to a  $\chi_9^2$  test.



# *Evaluating Distributions by Scoring Rules*

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

Scoring rules evaluate probabilistic predictions and (attempt to) measure the overall predictive ability of a model, i.e. both calibration and discrimination (Gneiting and Raftery 2007; Murphy 1973). Scoring rules have been gaining in popularity for the past couple of decades since probabilistic forecasts were recognised to be superior than deterministic predictions for capturing uncertainty in predictions (A. P. Dawid 1984; A. Philip Dawid 1986). Formalisation and development of scoring rules has primarily been due to Dawid (A. P. Dawid 1984; A. Philip Dawid 1986; A. Philip Dawid and Musio 2014) and Gneiting and Raftery (Gneiting and Raftery 2007); though the earliest measures promoting ‘rational’ and ‘honest’ decision making date back to the 1950s (Brier 1950; Good 1952). Whilst several scoring rules have been proposed for classification problems, fewer exist for probabilistic regression predictions (Gneiting and Raftery 2007) and even fewer for survival analysis. In practice, only three continuous scoring rules for regression are employed (though the last two of these are often conflated), the integrated Brier score (Brier 1950), the log loss (Good 1952), and the integrated log loss.<sup>1</sup> In survival analysis only one scoring rule was found to be routinely employed. In fact, there is no recognised definition of a scoring rule in survival analysis, nor definitions for the fundamental scoring rule properties of (strict) properness. This section attempts to fill these gaps and to explore the proposed scoring rules for survival analysis.<sup>2</sup>

This survey of survival scoring rules covers:

- i. basic definitions for scoring rules and properties;
- ii. proposed scoring rules for survival analysis;
- iii. proofs for (strict) properness; and
- iv. baselines and standard errors for scoring rules.

<sup>1</sup>These often appear under many different names. The Brier score is often referred to as the ‘squared-error loss’, or ‘quadratic score’, and the log loss often appears as the ‘log score’, ‘logarithmic loss’, ‘cross-entropy loss’, or ‘negative log-likelihood’.

<sup>2</sup>In this section a ‘scoring rule’ refers to the general class of measures that evaluate a probabilistic prediction and a ‘loss’ refers to the specific function to be minimised. As all scoring rules are optimally minimised in this survey, the terms are used interchangeably.

Key contributions include demonstrating that no commonly-utilised survival scoring rule is proper and deriving a class of strictly proper outcome-independent scoring rules with strict assumptions (see Section 8.0.2 for definitions and Section 8.0.4 for proofs).

Each of these subsections is built up in complexity, starting with binary classification, then probabilistic regression, and finally survival. This is required to demonstrate how the survival setting makes use of the other two for scoring rules.

To recap the notation from Chapter 4, the three mathematical settings are defined by the generative processes:

- Regression:  $(X, Y)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ .
- Classification:  $(X, Y)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{Y}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{Y} = \{0, 1\}$ .
- Survival:  $(X, T, \Delta, Y, C)$  *t.v.i.*  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{T} \times \mathcal{T}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , where  $C, Y$  are unobservable,  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$ , and  $\Delta = \mathbb{I}(Y = T)$ .

As the sections are clearly separated, the overloaded notation will be clear from context.

### 8.0.1 Classification and Regression Scoring Rules

Definitions and losses in the classification setting are first discussed and then the same in the regression setting.

#### 8.0.1.1 Classification

All scoring rules were initially derived from the binary classification setting, in this case scoring rules are considered to have the form in Box 8.1.

##### Binary classification loss

**Box 8.1.** *Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be some family of distributions over  $\mathcal{Y} = \{0, 1\}$  containing at least two elements. Then for a predicted distribution in  $\mathcal{P}$ , any real-valued function with the signature  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  will be considered as a binary classification loss.*

Any arbitrary function can be a binary classification loss as long as it satisfies the conditions in Box 8.1, for example  $L(\zeta, y) = 0$  is a valid loss for all  $\zeta \in \mathcal{P}$  and all  $y \in \mathcal{Y}$ . Therefore a scoring rule is generally only considered useful if it satisfies the properties below (Gneiting and Raftery 2007).

**Definition 8.1** (Classification loss properness). A classification loss  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  is called:

- Proper* if: for any distributions  $p_Y, p$  in  $\mathcal{P}$  and for any random variables  $Y \sim p_Y$ , it holds that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, Y)] \leq \mathbb{E}[L(p, Y)]$$

- Strictly proper* if in addition to being proper it holds, for the same quantification of variables, that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, Y)] = \mathbb{E}[L(p, Y)] \Leftrightarrow p = p_Y$$

Proper scoring rules provide a method of model comparison as, by definition, predictions closest to the true distribution will result in lower expected losses.<sup>3</sup> On the other hand, if a scoring rule is not proper (‘improper’ (Gneiting and Raftery 2007)) then it has no meaningful comparison as it is unknown if the optimal model would have a lower or higher loss than any sub-optimal one. A strictly proper scoring rule has additional important uses such as in model optimisation, i.e. if a loss is strictly proper then minimisation of the loss will result in the ‘optimum score estimator based on the scoring rule’ (Gneiting and Raftery 2007). Whilst properness is usually a minimal acceptable property for a scoring rule, it is generally not sufficient on its own. For example, take the following classification loss,

$$L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}; \quad (\zeta, y) \mapsto 42$$

This is proper as the loss,  $L$ , is always equal to 42 and therefore is minimised by the true distribution of  $Y$  but the loss is clearly useless. Properness and strict properness properties are utilised to determine if a scoring rule is performant and will be stated (if previously proved/disproved) or proved/disproved for all losses going forward.

### Losses

The two most widely used scoring rules for classification are the Brier score (Brier 1950) and log loss (Good 1952).<sup>4</sup>

The (binary classification) log loss is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} L_{LL} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \\ (\zeta, y) &\mapsto -\mathbb{I}(y = 1) \log(\zeta.p(1)) - \mathbb{I}(y = 0) \log(\zeta.p(0)) \end{aligned}$$

or more simply

$$(\zeta, y) \mapsto -\log \zeta.p(y)$$

The (binary classification) Brier score is defined by

$$L_{BS} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow [0, 1]; \quad (\zeta, y) \mapsto (y - \zeta.p(y))^2$$

These are both strictly proper scoring rules (A. Philip Dawid and Musio 2014) and are visualised in Figure 8.1 to demonstrate their properties. The figure highlights the ‘honesty’ property of the scoring rules (i.e. their strict properness) as both losses are shown to be minimised when the true prediction is made. The plot also demonstrates baselines for interpretability (Section 8.0.5.1). For the Brier score and log loss, any result below 0.25 and 0.693 respectively indicates a prediction better than a constant uninformed prediction of  $\zeta.p(1) = 0.5$ . Therefore classification scoring rules provide a method to simultaneously encourage honest predictions and have in-built informative baselines for external reference.

<sup>3</sup>Further details for model comparison are not provided here as the topic is complex and with many open questions, see e.g. (Demšar 2006; Dietterich 1998; Nadeau and Bengio 2003).

<sup>4</sup>Despite being called a ‘score’, the Brier score is in fact a loss to be minimised.

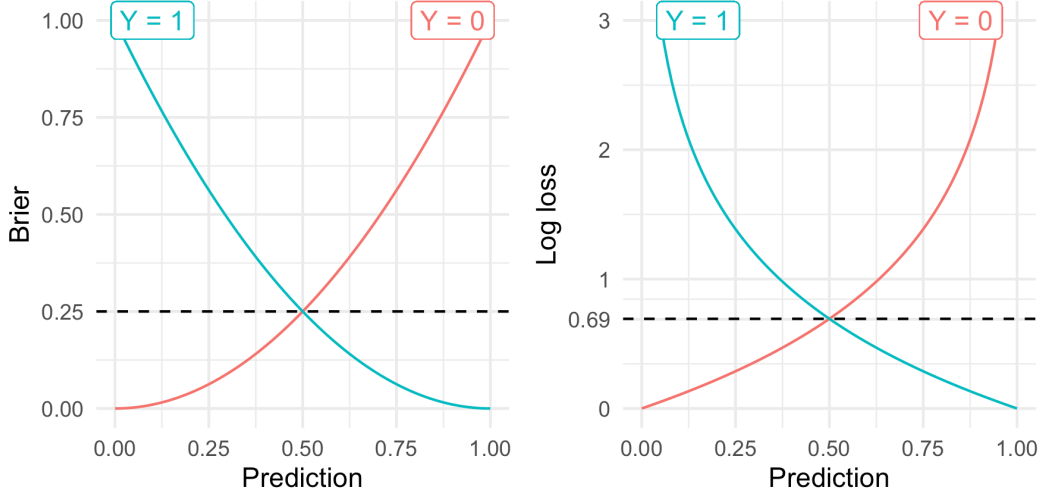


Figure 8.1: Brier and log loss scoring rules for a binary outcome and varying probabilistic predictions. x-axis is a probabilistic prediction in  $[0, 1]$ , y-axis is Brier score (left) and log loss (right). Blue lines are varying Brier score/log loss over different predicted probabilities when the true outcome is 1. Red lines are varying Brier score/log loss over different predicted probabilities when the true outcome is 0. Both losses are minimised with the correct prediction, i.e. if  $\zeta.p(1) = 1$  when  $y = 1$  and  $\zeta.p(1) = 0$  when  $y = 0$  for a predicted discrete distribution  $\zeta$ .

#### 8.0.1.2 Regression

The definition of a probabilistic regression scoring rule follows similarly to the classification setting after a re-specification of the target domain.

##### Probabilistic regression loss

**Box 8.2.** Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be some family of distributions over  $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  containing at least two elements. Then for a predicted distribution in  $\mathcal{P}$ , any real-valued function with the signature  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  will be considered as a probabilistic regression loss.

**Definition 8.2** (Regression loss properness). A probabilistic regression loss  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is called:

- i. *Proper* if: for any distributions  $p_Y, p$  in  $\mathcal{P}$  and for any random variables  $Y \sim p_Y$ , it holds that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, Y)] \leq \mathbb{E}[L(p, Y)]$$

- i. *Strictly proper* if in addition to being proper it holds, for the same quantification of variables, that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, Y)] = \mathbb{E}[L(p, Y)] \Leftrightarrow p = p_Y$$



## Losses

In the regression setting, classification scoring rules are extended by instead considering distribution functions and integrating these over  $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ .

The Integrated Brier Score (IBS) is defined by,<sup>5</sup>

$$L_{IBS} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow [0, 1]; \quad (\zeta, y) \mapsto \int_{\mathcal{Y}} (\mathbb{I}(y \leq \tau) - \zeta.F(\tau))^2 d\tau \quad (8.1)$$

The extension from the classification Brier score is intuitive, instead of evaluating if the predicted pmf is ‘correct’ at a single point, the predicted cumulative distribution function is compared with the true event status over the entire distribution.

The log loss has two adaptations for continuous predictions. The first is analogous to the IBS and is termed the Integrated Log Loss (ILL)

$$L_{ILL} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0};$$

$$(\zeta, y) \mapsto - \int_{\mathcal{Y}} \mathbb{I}(y \leq \tau) \log[\zeta.F(\tau)] + \mathbb{I}(y > \tau) \log[\zeta.S(\tau)] d\tau$$

This follows the ‘longer’ form of the binary classification log loss and considers the cumulative probability of events over all time-points. A second adaptation to the log loss instead considers the ‘simpler’ form and replaces the probability mass function with the probability density function. Again this measure is intuitive as a perfect distributional prediction will assign the highest point of density to the point at which the event occurs. This variant of the log loss does not have a specific name but it is termed here the ‘density log loss’,  $L_{DLL}$ , and is formally defined by,

$$L_{DLL} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{Y} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \quad (\zeta, y) \mapsto -\log[\zeta.f(y)] \quad (8.2)$$

where  $\mathcal{P}$  is a family of absolutely continuous distributions over  $\mathcal{Y}$  with defined density functions.

All three of these losses are strictly proper (Gneiting and Raftery 2007; Gressmann et al. 2018).

### 8.0.2 Survival Scoring Rule Definitions

Losses in the survival setting compare predicted survival distributions to the observed outcome tuple (time and censoring). A large class of survival losses additionally incorporate an estimator of the unknown censoring distribution, in order to attempt meaningful comparison. This second group of losses are termed here as ‘approximate’ losses as the true censoring distribution is never known and hence an estimate of the loss is approximate at best.

---

<sup>5</sup>also known as the Continuous Ranked Probability Score (CRPS).

## Survival loss

**Box 8.3.** Let  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$  and let  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{P}$  be any two distinct families of distributions over  $\mathcal{T}$ , containing at least two elements. Then,

- Any real-valued function with the signature  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  will be considered as a survival loss.
- Any real-valued function with the signature  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  will be considered as an approximate survival loss.

Two separate novel definitions for (strict) properness are provided: the first captures the general case in which no assumptions are made about the censoring distribution; the second assumes that censoring is conditionally event-independent.

**Definition 8.3** (Survival loss properness). A survival loss  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  is called:

- Proper* if: for any distributions  $p_Y, p$  in  $\mathcal{P}$ ; and for any random variables  $Y \sim p_Y$ , and  $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T}$ ; with  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ ; it holds that,

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta)] \leq \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta)]$$

- Strictly proper* if in addition to being proper it holds, for the same quantification of variables, that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta)] = \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta)] \Leftrightarrow p = p_Y$$

- Outcome-independent proper* if: for any distributions  $p_Y, p$  in  $\mathcal{P}$ ; and for any random variables  $Y \sim p_Y$ , and  $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T}$ , where  $C \perp\!\!\!\perp Y$ ; with  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ ; it holds that,

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta)] \leq \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta)]$$

- Outcome-independent strictly proper* if in addition to being outcome-independent proper it holds, for the same quantification of variables, that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta)] = \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta)] \Leftrightarrow p = p_Y$$

These final two definitions are ‘weaker’ but provide a term for losses that are improper in general but are (strictly) proper under common (though possibly strict) assumptions about the censoring distribution. Note by definition that if a loss is:

- (strictly) proper then it is also outcome-independent (strictly) proper;
- (outcome-independent) strictly proper then it is also (outcome-independent) proper

Analogous definitions are now provided for approximate survival losses.

**Definition 8.4** (Survival approximate loss properness). An approximate survival loss  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  is called:

i. *Proper* if: for any distributions  $p_Y, p$  in  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $c \in \mathcal{C}$ ; and for any random variables  $Y \sim p_Y$  and  $C \sim c$ ; with  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ ; it holds that,

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta|c)] \leq \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta|c)]$$

i. *Strictly proper* if in addition to being proper it holds, for the same quantification of variables, that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta|c)] = \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta|c)] \Leftrightarrow p = p_Y$$

i. *Outcome-independent proper* if: for any distributions  $p_Y, p$  in  $\mathcal{P}$  and  $c \in \mathcal{C}$ ; and for any random variables  $Y \sim p_Y$  and  $C \sim c$ , where  $C \perp\!\!\!\perp Y$ ; with  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ ; it holds that,

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta|c)] \leq \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta|c)]$$

i. *Outcome-independent strictly proper* if in addition to being outcome-independent proper it holds, for the same quantification of variables, that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta|c)] = \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta|c)] \Leftrightarrow p = p_Y$$

As the true censoring distribution,  $c$ , can never be known exactly, this definition allows for approximate losses to be proper in the asymptotic (with infinite training data) if they include estimators of  $c$  that are convergent in distribution. Proper approximate losses are therefore useful in modern predictive settings in which ‘big data’ is very common and thus estimators, such as the Kaplan-Meier, can converge to the true censoring distribution. However approximate losses may provide misleading results when the sample size is small; future research should ascertain what ‘small’ means for individual losses.

### 8.0.3 Common Survival Scoring Rules

The IBS, ILL, and DLL are now extended to the survival setting by suitably incorporating censoring and their properness properties are then discussed in Section 8.0.4. Measures are split into ‘classes’, which represent the basic form of the measure.

#### 8.0.3.1 Squared Survival Losses

The analogue to the IBS for survival analysis is termed here as the Integrated Graf Score (IGS) as it was extensively discussed and promoted by Graf (Graf and Schumacher 1995; Graf et al. 1999).

**Definition 8.5** (Integrated Graf score (IGS)).

$$\begin{aligned} L_{IGS} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} &\rightarrow [0, 1]; \\ (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) &\mapsto \int_0^{\tau^*} \frac{\zeta.S^2(\tau)\mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau, \delta = 1)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} + \frac{\zeta.F^2(\tau)\mathbb{I}(t > \tau)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(\tau)} d\tau \end{aligned} \quad (8.3)$$

where  $\zeta.S^2(\tau) = (\zeta.S(\tau))^2$ , analogously for  $\zeta.F^2$ , and  $\tau^* \in \mathcal{T}$  is an upper threshold to compute the loss up to.

The IGS consistently estimates the mean square error  $L(t, S|\tau^*) = \int_0^{\tau^*} [\mathbb{I}(t > \tau) - S(\tau)]^2 d\tau$ , where  $S$  is the correctly specified survival function, when censoring is uninformative only (Gerds and Schumacher 2006). This is intuitive as the IGS utilises the marginal Kaplan-Meier estimator to estimate the censoring distribution. Therefore CIPCW estimates such as the Cox model or Akritas estimator could instead be considered for  $\hat{G}_{KM}$  and these have been demonstrated to have less bias when censoring is informative (Gerds and Schumacher 2006). However this raises concerns as now separate models have to be trained and predicted, which could need validation themselves, and therefore the final measure is even more difficult to interpret. Graf claimed that the IGS is strictly proper (Graf et al. 1999) however as no definition of properness was provided this claim cannot be validated. With the definition of properness provided in this book (Definition 8.4), the IGS is not even proper (Section 8.0.4.4).

One could instead consider extending the IBS by weighting by  $\hat{G}_{KM}(t)$  only, giving the following loss.

**Definition 8.6** (Reweighted Integrated Graf score (IGS\*)). Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a family of absolutely continuous distributions over  $\mathcal{T}$  with defined density functions. Then the *reweighted Integrated Graf score* (IGS\*) is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} L_{IGS^*} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \\ (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) &\mapsto \frac{\delta \int_{\mathcal{T}} (\mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau) - \zeta.F(\tau))^2 d\tau}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} \end{aligned} \quad (8.4)$$

IGS\* is outcome-independent strictly proper (Section 8.0.4.3).

### 8.0.3.2 Log Survival Losses

The ILL is similarly extended to the Integrated Survival Log Loss (ISLL) (Graf et al. 1999).

**Definition 8.7** (Integrated survival log loss (ISLL)). The *integrated survival log loss* (ISLL) is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} L_{ISLL} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \\ (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) &\mapsto - \int_0^{\tau^*} \frac{\log[\zeta.F(\tau)] \mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau, \delta = 1)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} + \frac{\log[\zeta.S(\tau)] \mathbb{I}(t > \tau)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(\tau)} d\tau \end{aligned} \quad (8.5)$$

where  $\tau^* \in \mathcal{T}$  is an upper threshold to compute the loss up to.

The ISLL is not a proper approximate survival loss (Section 8.0.4.4). Again one could instead a different weighting in the denominator of the measure to give the following loss.

**Definition 8.8** (Reweighted integrated survival log loss (ISLL\*)). Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a family of absolutely continuous distributions over  $\mathcal{T}$  with defined density functions. Then the *reweighted integrated survival log loss* (ISLL\*) is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} L_{ISLL^*} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} &\rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \\ (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) &\mapsto - \frac{\delta \int_{\mathcal{T}} \mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau) \log[\zeta.F(\tau)] + \mathbb{I}(t > \tau) \log[\zeta.S(\tau)] d\tau}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} \end{aligned} \quad (8.6)$$

ISLL\* is an outcome-independent strictly proper scoring rule (Section 8.0.4.3).

The DLL can be extended in one of two ways, the first simply removes all censored observations.

**Definition 8.9** (Survival density log loss (SDLL)). Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a family of absolutely continuous distributions over  $\mathcal{T}$  with defined density functions. Then the *survival density log loss* (SDLL) is defined by

$$L_{SDLL} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta) \mapsto -\delta \log[\zeta \cdot f(t)] \quad (8.7)$$

The SDLL is not a proper scoring rule (Section 8.0.4.2). The second extension to DLL adds the same IPC weighting as IGS\* and ISLL\*.

**Definition 8.10** (Weighted survival density log loss (SDLL\*)). Let  $\mathcal{P}$  be a family of absolutely continuous distributions over  $\mathcal{T}$  with defined density functions. Then the *weighted survival density log loss* (SDLL\*) is defined by

$$L_{SDLL^*} : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) \mapsto -\frac{\delta \log[\zeta \cdot f(t)]}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} \quad (8.8)$$

SDLL\* is outcome-independent strictly proper (Section 8.0.4.3).

### 8.0.3.3 Absolute Survival Losses

Whilst the IGS and ISLL appear to be the most common losses in the literature, there is one other class to briefly mention that is based on absolute error functions. For example, the ‘absolute Brier score’ proposed by Schemper and Henderson (Schemper and Henderson 2000) which is based on the mean absolute error. This takes a similar approach to the IGS and weights the loss at different time-points according to whether an observation is censored. Studies of this loss have demonstrated that it depends heavily on correct model specification and is biased when this is not the case (Choodari-Oskoei, Royston, and Parmar 2012b; Schmid et al. 2011). To prevent this bias, Schmid *et al.* (Schmid et al. 2011) proposed the following robust approximate loss, termed here the ‘Schmid score’,

$$L(\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) = \int_0^{\tau^*} \frac{\zeta \cdot S(\tau) \mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau, \delta = 1)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} + \frac{\zeta \cdot F(\tau) \mathbb{I}(t > \tau)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(\tau)} d\tau$$

where  $\hat{G}_{KM}$  and  $\tau^*$  are as defined above. Analogously to the IGS, the Schmid score consistently estimates the mean absolute error when censoring is uninformative (Schmid et al. 2011). Both scores tend to yield similar results (Schmid et al. 2011).

### 8.0.3.4 Comparing Weighting Methods

The IGS and ISLL are well-established survival losses however no discussion about IGS\* and ISLL\* could be found in the literature. On the surface these measures may look very similar but there are two important differences, which are illustrated below with the ISLL and ISLL\*, recall these are defined as:

$$\begin{aligned} L_{ISLL^*}(\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) &= - \int_0^{\tau^*} \frac{\log[\zeta \cdot F(\tau)] \mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau, \delta = 1)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} + \frac{\log[\zeta \cdot S(\tau)] \mathbb{I}(t > \tau, \delta = 1)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} d\tau \\ L_{ISLL}(\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) &= - \int_0^{\tau^*} \frac{\log[\zeta \cdot F(\tau)] \mathbb{I}(t \leq \tau, \delta = 1)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)} + \frac{\log[\zeta \cdot S(\tau)] \mathbb{I}(t > \tau)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(\tau)} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

The primary differences are (right hand side of equations):

- i. Always removing censored observations from  $L_{ISLL}^*$  (even when alive) whereas  $L_{ISLL}$  includes all observations when alive.
- ii.  $L_{ISLL}^*$  weights alive and dead observations by  $\hat{G}_{KM}(t)$  whereas  $L_{ISLL}$  weights dead observations by  $\hat{G}_{KM}(t)$  and alive observations by  $\hat{G}_{KM}(\tau)$

Analytically the difference between these weighting results has major implications as  $L_{ISLL}^*$  (and  $L_{IGS}^*$ ) is outcome-independent strictly proper (Section 8.0.4.3) whereas  $L_{ISLL}$  (and  $L_{IGS}$ ) is not even proper (Section 8.0.4.4). However whilst it has been demonstrated that the IGS consistently estimates the mean squared error (Gerds and Schumacher 2006), no theory exists for  $IGS^*$ . Similarly no study has been made on  $ISLL^*$  and  $SDLL^*$ .

### 8.0.3.5 PECs

As well as evaluating probabilistic outcomes with integrated scoring rules, non-integrated scoring rules can also be utilised for evaluating distributions at a single point. For example, instead of evaluating a probabilistic prediction with the IGS over  $\mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , instead one could compute the IGS at a single time-point,  $\tau \in \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , only. Plotting these for varying values of  $\tau$  results in ‘prediction error curves’ (PECs), which provide a simple visualisation for how predictions vary over the outcome. PECs are especially useful for survival predictions as they can visualise the prediction ‘over time’. PECs should only be used as a graphical guide and never for model comparison as they only provide information at a limited number of points. An example is provided in [?@fig-eval-pecs](#) for the IGS; the CPH is consistently better performing than the SVM.

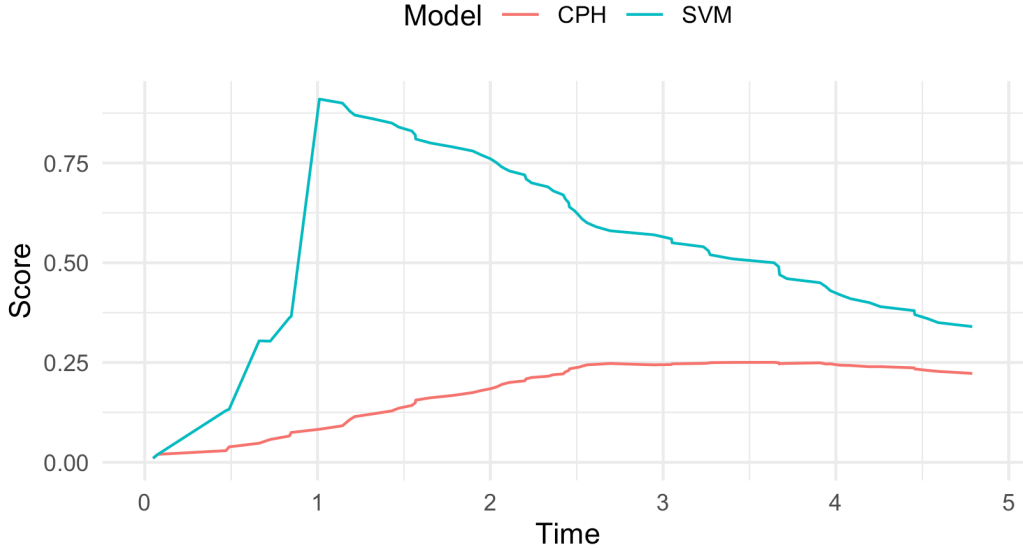


Figure 8.2: Prediction error curves for the CPH and SVM models from Chapter 7. x-axis is time and y-axis is the IGS computed at different time-points. The CPH (red) performs better than the SVM (blue) as it scores consistently lower. Trained and tested on randomly simulated data from **mlr3proba**.

### 8.0.4 Properness of Survival Scoring Rules

As the IBS, ILL, and DLL are all strictly proper regression losses, one may assume the analogous survival losses are also strictly proper. No arguments could be found proving/disproving properness of the survival losses, which may be due to researchers assuming properness followed from the regression setting. Despite these estimators being demonstrated to have useful properties and to ‘perform well’ in simulation experiments (Choodari-Oskooei, Royston, and Parmar 2012a, 2012b; Gerds and Schumacher 2006), it transpires that none are proper. Key results in this section are collected in the following summary theorem.

Let  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{>0}$  and let  $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{P}$  be two distinct families of distributions over  $\mathcal{T}$  containing at least two elements and let  $L_R : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be a regression scoring rule. Then the following statements are true:

- i.  $L_{SDLL}$  is not: a) outcome-independent proper; b) outcome-independent strictly proper; c) proper; d) strictly proper ((**prop-sdll-proper?**)).
- ii. Define the approximate survival loss,

$$L_S : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) \mapsto \frac{\delta L_R(\zeta, t)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)}$$

Then  $L_S$  is outcome-independent strictly proper if and only if  $L_R$  is strictly proper (Theorem 8.1). i.  $L_{SDLL^*}, L_{IGS^*}, L_{ISLL^*}$  are all outcome-independent strictly proper ((**prop-approx-proper-losses?**)). i.  $L_{IGS}$  is not: a) outcome-independent proper; b) outcome-independent strictly proper; c) proper; d) strictly proper ((**prop-eval-igs?**)). i.  $L_{ISLL}$  is not: a) outcome-independent proper; b) outcome-independent strictly proper; c) proper; d) strictly proper ((**prop-eval-isll?**)).

The following conjectures are also made:

- i. No survival loss,  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$ , is: a) outcome-independent strictly proper; b) strictly proper ((**conj-no-proper-loss?**)).
- ii. No approximate survival loss,  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$ , is strictly proper ((**conj-approx-strictly?**)).

#### 8.0.4.1 Definitions and Lemmas

Important proofs in this subsection follow after these definitions and lemmas.

**Lemma 8.1.** *Let  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be a survival loss. Let  $p_Y \in \mathcal{P}$ , let  $Y \sim p_Y$  and  $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T}$  be random variables where  $C \perp\!\!\!\perp Y$ . Let  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ . Then if  $\exists p \in \mathcal{P}, p \neq p_Y$ , such that*

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta)] > \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta)]$$

*Then,  $L$  is not:*

- i. outcome-independent proper;
- ii. outcome-independent strictly proper;
- iii. proper;
- iv. strictly proper.

**Lemma 8.2.** Let  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be an approximate survival loss. Let  $p_Y \in \mathcal{P}$  and let  $c \in \mathcal{C}$ . Let  $Y \sim p_Y$  and  $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T}$  be random variables. Let  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ . Then if  $\exists p \in \mathcal{P}, p \neq p_Y$ , such that

$$\mathbb{E}[L(p_Y, T, \Delta|c)] > \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta|c)]$$

Then:  $L$  is not,

- i. proper;
- ii. strictly proper.

**Definition 8.11** (Properness terminology). Let  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be a proper scoring rule and let  $p, p_Y$  be distributions in  $\mathcal{P}$ . Let  $Y \sim p_Y$  and  $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T}$  be random variables and let  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ . Then, (Gneiting and Raftery 2007)

- i.  $S_L(p_Y, p) := \mathbb{E}[L(p, T, \Delta)]$  is defined as the *expected penalty*.
- ii.  $H_L(p_Y) := S_L(p_Y, p_Y)$  is defined as the *(generalised) entropy* of  $p_Y \in \mathcal{P}$ .
- iii.  $D_L(p_Y, p) := S_L(p_Y, p) - H_L(p_Y)$  is defined as the *discrepancy* or *divergence* of  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  from  $p_Y \in \mathcal{P}$ .

Similar definitions follow for the expected penalty, entropy, and divergence for an approximate survival loss  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$ .

**Lemma 8.3.** Let  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be a survival loss and let  $p_Y$  be a distribution in  $\mathcal{P}$ . Let  $Y \sim p_Y$  and  $C$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{T}$  be random variables and let  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$  and  $\Delta := \mathbb{I}(T = Y)$ . Then,

- $D_L(p_Y, p) \geq 0$  for all  $p \in \mathcal{P}$  if  $L$  is proper
- $D_L(p_Y, p) > 0$  iff  $L$  is strictly proper and  $p \neq p_Y$

**Definition 8.12** (Joint density). Let  $X$  be an absolutely continuous random variable and let  $Y$  be a discrete random variable. Then,

- i. The *mixed joint density* of  $(X, Y)$  is defined by

$$f_{X,Y}(x, y) = f_{X|Y}(x|y)P(Y = y)$$

where  $f_{X|Y}(x|y)$  is the conditional probability density function of  $X$  given  $Y = y$ . i. The *mixed joint cumulative distribution function* of  $(X, Y)$  is given by

$$F_{X,Y}(x, y) = \sum_{z \leq y} \int_{u=-\infty}^x f_{X,Y}(u, z) du$$

**Lemma 8.4.** Let  $X, Y$  be jointly absolutely continuous random variables supported on the Reals with joint density function  $f_{X,Y}(x, y)$  and let  $Z = \mathbb{I}(X \leq Y)$ , then the mixed joint density of  $(X, Z)$  is given by

$$f_{X,Z}(x, z) = \begin{cases} \int_x^\infty f_{X,Y}(x, y) dy, & z = 1 \\ \int_{-\infty}^x f_{X,Y}(x, y) dy, & z = 0 \end{cases}$$



**Corollary 8.1.** *Let  $X, Y$  be jointly absolutely continuous random variables supported on the Reals with joint density function  $f_{X,Y}(x, y)$  and let  $Z = \mathbb{I}(X \leq Y)$ . As a direct corollary to Lemma 8.4, if  $X$  and  $Y$  are independent then the mixed joint density of  $(X, Z)$  is given by*

$$f_{X,Z}(x, z) = \begin{cases} f_X(x)S_Y(x), & z = 1 \\ f_X(x)F_Y(x), & z = 0 \end{cases}$$

**Lemma 8.5.** *Let  $X, Y$  be jointly absolutely continuous random variables supported on the Reals with joint density function  $f_{X,Y}(x, y)$  and let  $Z = \mathbb{I}(X \leq Y)$ , then the mixed joint density of  $(Y, Z)$  is given by*

$$f_{Y,Z}(y, z) = \begin{cases} \int_y^y f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx, & z = 1 \\ \int_y^\infty f_{X,Y}(x, y) dx, & z = 0 \end{cases}$$

In addition if  $X \perp\!\!\!\perp Y$ , then

$$f_{Y,Z}(y, z) = \begin{cases} f_Y(y)F_X(y), & z = 1 \\ f_Y(y)S_X(y), & z = 0 \end{cases}$$

#### 8.0.4.2 No Strictly Proper Survival Loss

First it is proved that the survival density log loss is not outcome-independent proper and then a conjecture is made on the strict properness of all non-approximate losses.

The survival density log loss is not:

- i. outcome-independent proper
- ii. outcome-independent strictly proper
- iii. proper
- iv. strictly proper

Not only is the  $L_{SDLL}$  not outcome-independent proper but the counter-example in the proof is not even a rare edge case. Accounting for the censoring distribution is attempted by approximate losses, which are explored after the following conjecture.

Let  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be a survival loss, then  $L$  is not:

- i. outcome-independent strictly proper;
- ii. strictly proper;

This conjecture is motivated by identifying that as the true censoring distribution is always unknown, a counter-example can likely always be identified to contradict the loss being strictly proper.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup>This conjecture is being explored as part of a theorem in a paper with external collaborators.

### 8.0.4.3 Strictly Proper Approximate Survival Losses

By making strict assumptions about the data, some survival scoring rules can still be useful, these assumptions are:

- i. survival times and censoring times are independent;
- ii. the training dataset is large enough to approximate the censoring distribution

With these assumptions, a large class of approximate losses can be outcome-independent strictly proper.

**Theorem 8.1.** *Let  $L_R : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be a regression loss and define the approximate survival loss*

$$L_S : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}; \quad (\zeta, t, \delta | \hat{G}_{KM}) \mapsto \frac{\delta L_R(\zeta, t)}{\hat{G}_{KM}(t)}$$

*Then  $L_S$  is outcome-independent strictly proper if and only if  $L_R$  is strictly proper.*

The following approximate survival losses are outcome-independent strictly proper:

- i.  $L_{SDLL^*}$  – Equation 8.8
- ii.  $L_{IGS^*}$  – Equation 8.4
- iii.  $L_{ISLL^*}$  – Equation 8.6

### 8.0.4.4 Non-Proper Approximate Survival Losses

From the previous proofs, it would be natural to assume that  $L_{IGS}$  and  $L_{ISLL}$  are also outcome-independent strictly proper, however this is not the case.

The integrated Graf score,  $L_{IGS}$ , is not:

- i. outcome-independent proper
- ii. outcome-independent strictly proper
- iii. proper
- iv. strictly proper

Whilst in this counter-example the value of  $D_{IGS}(\xi, \zeta)$  is very close to zero, there will be other counter-examples with a more pronounced difference, though this is not required for the proof. Also note that again this is not a rare edge case, practically this example is reflected in any real-world scenario in which the prediction is close to the truth and when the censoring and survival times follow the same distribution.

**Proposition 8.1.** *The integrated survival log-loss,  $L_{ISLL}$ , is not:*

- i. outcome-independent proper
- ii. outcome-independent strictly proper
- iii. proper
- iv. strictly proper

Proof is not provided but follows with the same argumentation as the previous proposition and noting that a counter-example can always be found as  $C$  is unknown and cannot be removed from the equation.

**Box 8.4.** *Let  $L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \bar{\mathbb{R}}$  be an approximate survival loss, then  $L$  is not strictly proper.*

This conjecture is motivated by noting that the joint distribution of  $(Y, C)$  is always unknown and thus a suitable counter-example to strict-properness can likely always be derived.<sup>7</sup>

### 8.0.5 Baselines and ERV

A common criticism of scoring rules is a lack of interpretability, e.g. without context an IGS of 0.5 or 0.0005 have no meaning. The final part of this section very briefly looks at two methods that help increase the interpretability of scoring rules. Scoring rules may already be considered less transparent than, say, concordance indices, as the underlying mathematics is more abstract, and therefore interpretability of the measure can play a large role in increasing transparency.

#### 8.0.5.1 Baselines

A baseline is either a model or a value that can be utilised to provide a reference value for a scoring rule, they provide a universal method to judge all models of the same class by (Gressmann et al. 2018).

In classification, an analytical baseline value can be derived for measures, i.e. a baseline model does not actually need to be fit to know what a ‘good’ value for the loss is. For example it is generally known that a Brier score is considered ‘good’ if it is below 0.25 or a log loss if it is below 0.693 (Section 8.0.1). Unfortunately simple analytical expressions are not possible in survival analysis as the losses are dependent on the distributions of both the survival and censoring time. Therefore all experiments in survival analysis must include a baseline model that can produce a reference value in order to derive meaningful results.

There is a clear consensus that the Kaplan-Meier estimator is the most sensible baseline model for survival modelling (Graf and Schumacher 1995; Lawless and Yuan 2010; Royston and Altman 2013) as it is the simplest model that can consistently estimate the true survival function. One could also consider the Akritas estimator as a tunable conditional baseline (Section 11.1.1).

Baseline models are often ignored in experiments when there is overconfidence in a particular model class, this is frequently the case in survival analysis in which a novel model class may only be compared to a Cox PH. This has practical and ethical implications. The calibration example in Section 7.0.1 demonstrates how one sophisticated model (CPH) may outperform another (SVM) and still perform worse than the Kaplan-Meier. Not including Kaplan-Meier in every experiment could lead to over-confidence in a novel model that is no better than an unconditional estimator (with no individual predictive ability).

#### 8.0.5.2 Explained Residual Variation

Baseline models can also be utilised to derive a potentially more useful representation of scoring rules. Any scoring rule can be utilised to derive a measure of explained residual variation (ERV) (Edward L. Korn and Simon 1990; Edward L. Korn and Simon 1991) by standardising the loss with respect to a baseline, say Kaplan-Meier. For any survival loss  $L$  (analogously for an approximate survival loss), the ERV is,

---

<sup>7</sup>This conjecture is being explored as part of a theorem in a paper with external collaborators.

$$\begin{aligned}
R_L : \mathcal{P} \times \mathcal{P} \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}^m \times \{0, 1\}^m &\rightarrow [0, 1]; \\
(\zeta, \xi_0, t, \delta) &\mapsto 1 - \frac{\frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m L(\zeta, t_i, \delta_i)}{\frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m L(\xi_0, t_i, \delta_i)}
\end{aligned} \tag{8.9}$$

where  $t = t_1, \dots, t_m$ ,  $\delta = \delta_1, \dots, \delta_m$  and  $\zeta$  should be a predicted distribution from a sophisticated (non-baseline) model and  $\xi_0$  is a prediction from the Kaplan-Meier estimator.<sup>8</sup>

Representing a scoring rule in this manner improves interpretability by allowing for model comparison whilst simultaneously capturing the improvement from a baseline. Therefore instead of reporting some arbitrary loss value, say  $L = 0.1$ , one can instead report  $R_L = 70$  which demonstrates a clear improvement (of 70%) over the baseline.

## 8.1 Conclusions

This chapter briefly reviewed different classes of survival measures before focusing on the application of scoring rules to survival analysis.

One finding of note from the review of survival measures is the possibility that research and debate has become too focused on measures of discrimination. For example, many papers state the flaws of Harrell's C index (Gönen and Heller 2005; Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012; Uno et al. 2007) however few acknowledge that simulation experiments have demonstrated that common alternatives yield very similar results to Harrell's C (Rahman et al. 2017; Therneau and Atkinson 2020) and moreover some prominent alternatives, such as Uno's C (Uno et al. 2007), are actually harder to interpret due to very high variance (Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012). Whilst all concordance indices may be considered accessible and transparent, there is considerable doubt over their performance due to influence from censoring.

Focus on discrimination could be the reason for less development in survival time and calibration measures. There is evidence (P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019) of the censoring-adjusted RMSE, MAE, and MSE (Chapter 9) being used in evaluation but without any theoretical justification, which may lead to questionable results. Less development in calibration measures is likely due to these measures being more widely utilised for re-calibration of models and not in model comparison. The new D-Calibration measure (Andres et al. 2018; Haider et al. 2020) could prove useful for model comparison however independent simulation experiments and theoretical studies of the measure's properties would first be required. No calibration measures can be considered performant due to a lack of clear definition of a calibration measure for survival, moreover the reviewed measures may not even be transparent and accessible due to requiring expert interpretation.

The most problematic findings in this chapter lie in the survival scoring rules. Section 8.0.4 proved that no commonly used scoring rule is proper, which means that any results regarding model comparison based on these measures are thrown into question. It is also conjectured that no approximate survival loss can be strictly proper (in general), which is due to the joint distribution of the censoring and survival distribution always being unknown and impossible to estimate (though the marginal censoring distribution can be estimated). As

<sup>8</sup>Equation 8.9 assumes the numerator is always less than the denominator or more specifically that the sophisticated model is 'better' than the baseline; if this is not the case then  $R_L^2 < 0$ . Therefore this representation should only be utilised when the model outperforms the baseline.

demonstrated in Section 8.0.1, a proper scoring rule is not necessarily a useful one and therefore is not enough for robust model validation.

As an important caveat to the findings in this chapter, this book presents one particular definition of properness for survival scoring rules. This definition is partially subjective and other definitions could instead be considered. Therefore these losses should not be immediately dismissed outright. As well as deriving new losses that are (strictly) proper with respect to the definitions provided here, research may also be directed towards finding other sensible definitions of properness, or in confirming that the definition here is the only sensible option.

This chapter demonstrates that no survival measure on its own can capture enough information to fully evaluate a survival prediction. This is a serious problem that will either lead (or already is leading) to less interest and uptake in survival modelling, or misunderstanding and deployment of sub-optimal models. Evaluation of survival models is still possible but currently requires expert interpretation to prevent misleading results. If the aim of a study is solely in assessing a model's discriminatory power, then measures of discrimination alone are sufficient, otherwise a range of classes should be included to capture all aspects of model performance. This book advocates reporting *all* of the below to evaluate model performance:

- **Calibration:** Houwelingen's  $\alpha$  and (Van Houwelingen 2007) *and* D-calibration (Haider et al. 2020).
- **Discrimination:** Harrell's (F. E. J. Harrell et al. 1984) *and* Uno's (Uno et al. 2011) C. By including two (or even more) measures of concordance, one can determine a feasible range for the 'true' discriminatory ability of the model instead of basing results on a single measure. Time-dependent AUCs can also be considered but these may require expert-interpretation and may only be advisable for discrimination-specific studies.
- **Scoring Rules:** When censoring is outcome-independent and a large enough training dataset is available, then the re-weighted integrated Graf score and re-weighted integrated survival log-loss (Section 8.0.3). Otherwise the IGS *and* ISLL (Graf et al. 1999) which should be interpreted together to ensure consistency in results.

If survival time prediction is the primary goal then  $\text{RMSE}_C$  and  $\text{MAE}_C$  can be included in the analysis however these should not form the primary conclusions due to a lack of theoretical justification. Instead, scoring rules should be utilised as a distributional prediction can always be composed into a survival time prediction (Chapter 15).

All measures discussed in this chapter, with the exception of the Blanche AUC, have been implemented in **mlr3proba** (R. Sonabend et al. 2021).



---

## *Evaluating Survival Time*

---

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

When it comes to evaluating survival time predictions, there are few measures available at our disposal. As a result of survival time predictions being uncommon compared to other prediction types (Section 4.3), there are limited survival time evaluation measures in the literature. To our knowledge, there are no specialised ‘survival time measures’, instead regression measures are used by ignoring censored observations.

Before presenting these measures, consider what happens when censored observations are discarded. If censoring is truly independent, occurs randomly, and is *very* limited in the data, then there is little harm in discarding observations and treating this as a regression problem. However, if censoring is not independent, then discarding censored observations will lead to missing valuable insights about the model. For example, say the task of interest is to predict the probability of death due to kidney failure and patients are censored if they receive a transplant - this is clearly a competing risk as receiving a transplant greatly reduces the probability of death. If one were to predict the time to death for all patients and to not evaluate the quality of prediction for censored patients, then it would only be possible to conclude about the model’s performance for those who do not receive a transplant. On the surface this may appear to be of value, however, if at the time of prediction it is impossible to know who will receive a transplant (perhaps because the dataset omits relevant information such as time of hospital admission, wait on register, etc.), then for a given prediction for an observation, it would be impossible to know if the prediction is trustworthy - it would be if that patient does not receive a transplant, but would not be if they do not. In short, it is essential that predictions for individuals who end up being censored, are as good as those who are not, simply because there is no method to know which group observations will eventually fall into.

It is interesting to consider if IPCW strategies would compensate for this deficiency, however as we were unable to find research into this method, we have only included measures that we term ‘censoring-ignored regression measures’, which are presented in (P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019).

## 9.1 Distance measures

Survival time measures are often referred to as ‘distance’ measures as they measure the distance between the true,  $(t, \delta = 1)$ , and predicted,  $\hat{t}$ , values. These are presented in turn with brief descriptions of their interpretation.

### Censoring-ignored mean absolute error, $MAE_C$

In regression, the mean absolute error (MAE) is a popular measure because it is intuitive to understand as it measures the absolute difference between true and predicted outcomes; hence intuitively one can understand that a model predicting a height of 175cm is clearly better than one predicting a height of 180cm, for a person with true height of 174cm.

$$MAE_C(\hat{t}, t, \delta) = \frac{1}{d} \sum_{i=1}^m \delta_i |t_i - \hat{t}_i|$$

Where  $d$  is the number of uncensored observations in the dataset,  $d = \sum_i \delta_i$ .

### Censoring-ignored mean squared error

In comparison to MAE, the mean squared error (MSE), computes the squared differences between true and predicted values. While the MAE provides a smooth, linear, ‘penalty’ for increasingly poor predictions (i.e., the difference between an error of predicting 2 vs. 5 is still 3), but the square in the MSE means that larger errors are quickly magnified (so the difference in the above example is 9). By taking the mean over all predictions, the effect of this inflation is to increase the MSE value as larger mistakes are made.

$$MSE_C(\hat{t}, t, \delta) = \frac{1}{d} \sum_{i=1}^m \delta_i (t_i - \hat{t}_i)^2$$

### Censoring-adjusted root mean squared error

Finally, the root mean squared error (RMSE), is simply the square root of the MSE. This allows interpretation on the original scale (as opposed to the squared scale produced by the MSE). Given the inflation effect for the MSE, the RMSE will be larger than the MAE as increasingly poor predictions are made; it is common practice for the MAE and RMSE to be reported together.

$$RMSE_C(\hat{t}, t, \delta) = \sqrt{MSE_C(t, \hat{t}, \delta)}$$

## 9.2 Over- and under-predictions

All of these distance measures assume that the error for an over-prediction ( $\hat{t} > t$ ) should be equal to an under-prediction ( $\hat{t} < t$ ), i.e., that it is ‘as bad’ if a model predicts an outcome time being 10 years longer than the truth compared to being 10 years shorter. In the survival setting, this assumption is often invalid as it is generally preferred for models



to be overly cautious, hence to predict negative events to happen sooner (e.g., predict a life-support machine fails after three years not five if the truth is actually four) and to predict positive events to happen later (e.g., predict a patient recovers after four years not two if the truth is actually three). A simple method to incorporate this imbalance between over- and under-predictions is to add a weighting factor to any of the above measures, for example the  $MAE_C$  might become

$$MAE_C(\hat{t}, t, \delta, \lambda, \mu, \phi) = \frac{1}{d} \sum_{i=1}^m \delta_i |(t_i - \hat{t}_i) [\lambda \mathbb{I}(t_i > \hat{t}_i) + \mu \mathbb{I}(t_i < \hat{t}_i) + \phi \mathbb{I}(t_i = \hat{t}_i)]|$$

where  $\lambda, \mu, \phi$  are any Real number to be used to weight over-, under-, and exact-predictions. The choice of these are highly context dependent and could even be tuned.



# 10

---

## *Choosing Measures*

---

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

After reading this part of the book, evaluating survival analysis models may appear more daunting than regression and classification settings, which, in contrast, have fewer (common) measures to choose from. In regression problems, the RMSE and MAE are common choices for evaluating how far predictions are from the truth. In classification, the Brier score or logloss may be used to evaluate probabilistic predictions and the accuracy score or TPR/TNR/FPR/FNR are common for deterministic predictions. In contrast, there are many more measures in survival analysis which are necessarily more complex, due to the need to handle censoring with many possible methods for doing so. Therefore, this final chapter aims to provide some simple to follow guidelines for selecting measures for different types of experiments.

---

### 10.1 Defining the experiment

Experiments may be performed to make predictions for new data, compare the performance of multiple models ('benchmark experiments'), investigate patterns in observed data, or some combination of these. Each experiment requires different choices of measures, with different levels of strictness applied to measure assumptions.

#### 10.1.1 Predictive experiments

In the real world, predictive experiments are most common. These are now daily occurrences as machine learning models are routinely deployed on servers to make ongoing predictions. In these cases, the exact task must be precisely stated before any model is deployed and evaluated. Common survival problems to solve include: identifying low and high risk groups in new data (for resource allocation); predicting the survival distribution for an individual over time; and predicting the survival probability for an individual at a specific time.

The first of these is a discrimination problem and it is therefore most important that the model optimises corresponding measures and that measure assumptions are justified. However, even this task may be more complex than it initially seems. For example, while some

papers have shown flaws in Harrell’s C (Gönen and Heller 2005; Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012; Uno et al. 2007), others have demonstrated that common alternatives yield very similar results (Rahman et al. 2017; Therneau and Atkinson 2020) and moreover some prominent alternatives may be harder to interpret due to high variance (Rahman et al. 2017; Schmid and Potapov 2012). In predictive experiment that may require more level of automation, it is important to be careful of C-hacking (`?@sec-eval-crank-choose`) and to avoid overoptimistic results. Hence one should not compute a range of concordance indices and report the maximum but instead calculate a single discrimination measure and then establish a pre-defined threshold to determine if the deployed model is optimal, a natural threshold would be 0.5 as anything above this is better than a baseline model. Given Harrell’s C to be increasingly over-optimistic with additional censoring (Rahman et al. 2017), it is advisable to use Uno’s C instead.

If the task of interest is to predict survival distributions *over time*, then the choice of measure is more limited and only the RCLL and the proper Graf score are recommended. Both these measures can only be interpreted with respect to a baseline so use of the ERV representation is strongly recommended. As with the previous task, establishing a threshold for performance is essential prior to deployment and for ongoing evaluation. It is less clear in these cases what this threshold might be, but the simplest starting point would be to ensure that the model continues to outperform the baseline or a simpler gold-standard model (e.g., the Cox PH).

The final task of interest differs from the previous by only making predictions at a specific time. In this case, prediction error curves, and single-time point calibration measures can be used, as well as scoring rules with shorter cut-offs (i.e., the upper limit of the integral). It is imperative that model performance is never extrapolated outside of the pre-specified time.

### 10.1.2 Benchmark experiments

When conducting benchmark experiments, it is advisable to use a spread of measures so that results can be compared across various properties. In this case, models should be tested against discrimination, calibration, and overall predictive ability (i.e., with scoring rules). As models make different types of predictions, results from these experiments should be limited to metrics that are directly comparable, in other words, two models should only be compared based on the *same* metric. In benchmark experiments, models are compared across the same data and same resampling strategy, hence measure assumptions become less important as they are equally valid or flawed for all models. For example, if one dataset has particularly high amounts of censoring leading to an artificially higher concordance index, then this bias would affect all models equally and the overall experiment would not be affected. Hence, in these experiments it suffices to pick one or two measures for concordance, discrimination, and predictive ability, without having to be overly concerned with the individual metric.

This book recommends using Harrell’s C and Uno’s C for concordance as these are simplest to compute and including both enables more confidence in model comparison, i.e., if a model outperforms another with respect to both these measures then there can be higher confidence in drawing statements about the model’s discriminatory power. For calibration, D-calibration is recommended as it can be meaningfully compared between models, and the RCLL is recommended for a scoring rule (which is proper for outcome-independent censoring). No distance measure is recommended as these do not apply to the vast majority of models. All these measures can be used for automated tuning, in the case of discrimination tuning to Harrell’s C alone should suffice (without also tuning to Uno’s C).

### 10.1.3 Investigation

Investigating patterns in observed data is increasingly common as model interpretability methods have become more accessible (Molnar 2019). Before data can be investigated, any model that is trained on the data must first be demonstrated to be a good fit to the data. A model's fit to data can also be evaluated by resampling the data (Chapter 3) and evaluating the predictions. In this case, it is important to choose measures that are interpretable and have justified assumptions. Calibration measures are particularly useful for evaluating if a model is well fit to data, and any of the methods described in Chapter 7 are recommended for this purpose. Discrimination measures *may* be useful, however, given how susceptible they are to censoring, they can be difficult to interpret on their own, and the same is true for scoring rules. One method to resolve ambiguity is to perform a benchmark experiment of multiple models on the same data (ideally with some automated tuning) and then select the best model from this experiment and refit it on the full data (Becker, Schneider, and Fischer 2024) – this is a robust, empirical method that demonstrates a clear trail to selecting a model that outperforms other potential candidates. When investigating a dataset, one may also consider using different measures to assess algorithmic fairness (R. Sonabend et al. 2022), any measure that can be optimised (i.e., where the lowest or highest value is the best) may be used in this case. Finally, there are survival adaptations to the well-known AIC (Liang and Zou 2008) and BIC (Volinsky and Raftery 2000) however as these are generally only applicable to low-complexity models, they are out of scope for this book and hence have not been discussed.

---

## 10.2 Conclusions

This part of the book focused on survival measures. Measures may be used to evaluate model predictions, to tune a model, or to train a model (e.g., in boosting or neural networks). Unlike other settings, there are many different choices of survival measures and it can be hard to determine which to use and when. In practice, like many areas of Statistics, the most important factor is to clearly define any experiment upfront and to be clear about which measures will be used and why. As a rule of thumb, good choices for measures are Harrell's C for evaluating discrimination, with Uno's C supporting findings, D-calibration for calibration, and the RCLL for evaluating overall predictive ability from distribution predictions.



## Part III

# Models





# 11

## *Classical Models*

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

TODO

- change chapter name (don't use "classical")
- 

### 11.1 A Review of Classical Survival Models

This chapter provides a brief review of classical survival models before later chapters move on to machine learning models. 'Classical' models are defined with a very narrow scope in this book: low-complexity models that are either non-parametric or have parameters that can be fit with maximum likelihood estimation (or an equivalent method). In contrast, 'machine learning' (ML) models require more intensive model fitting procedures such as recursion or iteration. The classical models in this paper are fast to fit and highly interpretable, though can be inflexible and may make unreasonable assumptions. Whereas the ML models are more flexible with hyper-parameters however are computationally more intensive (both in terms of speed and storage), require tuning to produce 'good' results, and are often a 'black-box' with difficult interpretation.

As classical survival models have been studied extensively for decades, these are only discussed briefly here, primarily these are of interest as many of these models will be seen to influence machine learning extensions. The scope of the models discussed in this chapter is limited to the general book scope (Section 4.2), i.e. single event with right-censoring and no competing-risks, though in some cases these are discussed.

There are several possible taxonomies for categorising statistical models, these include:

- Parametrisation Type: One of non-, semi-, or fully-parametric. \ Non-parametric models assume that the data distribution cannot be specified with a finite set of parameters. In

contrast, fully-parametric models assume the distribution can be specified with a finite set of parameters. Semi-parametric models are a hybrid of the two and are formed of a finite set of parameters *and* an infinite-dimensional ‘nuisance’ parameter.

- **Conditionality Type:** One of unconditional or conditional. A conditional prediction is one that makes use of covariates in order to condition the prediction on each observation. Unconditional predictors, which are referred to below as ‘estimators’, ignore covariate data and make the same prediction for all individuals.
- **Prediction Type:** One of ranking, survival time, or distribution (Section 4.3).

Table 11.1 summarises the models discussed below into the taxonomies above for reference. Note that the Cox model is listed as predicting a continuous ranking, and not a survival distribution, which may appear inconsistent with other definitions. The reason for this is elaborated upon in Chapter 15. Though the predict-type taxonomy is favoured throughout this book, it is clearer to review classical models in increasing complexity, beginning with unconditional estimators before moving onto semi-parametric continuous ranking predictions, and finally conditional distribution predictors. The review is brief with mathematics limited to the model fundamentals but not including methods for parameter estimation. Also the review is limited to the ‘basic’ model specification and common extensions such as regularization are not discussed though they do exist for many of these models.

All classical models are highly transparent and accessible, with decades of research and many off-shelf implementations. Predictive performance of each model is briefly discussed as part of the review and then again in (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021).

Table 11.1: Table of models discussed in this literature review, classified by parametrisation, prediction type, and conditionality.

| Model <sup>1</sup>       | Parametrisation <sup>2</sup> | Prediction <sup>3</sup> | Conditionality |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| Kaplan-Meier             | Non                          | Distr.                  | Unconditional  |
| Nelson-Aalen             | Non                          | Distr.                  | Unconditional  |
| Akritas                  | Non                          | Distr.                  | Conditional    |
| Cox PH                   | Semi                         | Rank                    | Conditional    |
| Parametric PH            | Fully                        | Distr.                  | Conditional    |
| Accelerated Failure Time | Fully                        | Distr.                  | Conditional    |
| Proportional Odds        | Fully                        | Distr.                  | Conditional    |
| Flexible Spline          | Fully                        | Distr.                  | Conditional    |

\* 1. All models are implemented in the R package **survival** (Therneau 2015) with the exception of flexible splines, implemented in **flexsurv** (Jackson 2016), and the Akritas estimator in **survivalmodels** (R. Sonabend 2020). \* 2. Non = non-parametric, Semi = semi-parametric, Fully = fully-parametric. \* 3. Distr. = distribution, Rank = ranking.

### 11.1.1 Non-Parametric Distribution Estimators

#### Unconditional Estimators

Unconditional non-parametric survival models assume no distribution for survival times and estimate the survival function using simple algorithms based on observed outcomes and no covariate data. The two most common methods are the Kaplan-Meier estimator (**KaplanMeier1958?**), which estimates the average survival function of a training dataset,

and the Nelson-Aalen estimator (Aalen 1978; Nelson 1972), which estimates the average cumulative hazard function of a training dataset.

The Kaplan-Meier estimator of the survival function is given by

$$\hat{S}_{KM}(\tau|\mathcal{D}_{train}) = \prod_{t \in \mathcal{U}_O, t \leq \tau} \left(1 - \frac{d_t}{n_t}\right) \quad (11.1)$$

As this estimate is so important in survival models, this book will always use the symbol  $\hat{S}_{KM}$  to refer to the Kaplan-Meier estimate of the average survival function fit on training data  $(T_i, \Delta_i)$ . Another valuable function is the Kaplan-Meier estimate of the average survival function of the *censoring* distribution, which is the same as above but estimated on  $(T_i, 1 - \Delta_i)$ , this will be denoted by  $\hat{G}_{KM}$ .

The Nelson-Aalen estimator for the cumulative hazard function is given by

$$\hat{H}(\tau|\mathcal{D}_{train}) = \sum_{t \in \mathcal{U}_O, t \leq \tau} \frac{d_t}{n_t} \quad (11.2)$$

The primary advantage of these models is that they rely on heuristics from empirical outcomes only and don't require any assumptions about the form of the data. To train the models they only require  $(T_i, \Delta_i)$  and both return a prediction of  $\mathcal{S} \subseteq \text{Distr}(\mathcal{T})$  (**box-task-surv?**). In addition, both simply account for censoring and can be utilised in fitting other models or to estimate unknown censoring distributions. The Kaplan-Meier and Nelson-Aalen estimators are both consistent estimators for the survival and cumulative hazard functions respectively.

Utilising the relationships provided in (Section 4.3), one could write the Nelson-Aalen estimator in terms of the survival function as  $\hat{S}_{NA} = \exp(-\hat{H}(\tau|\mathcal{D}_{train}))$ . It has been demonstrated that  $\hat{S}_{NA}$  and  $\hat{S}_{KM}$  are asymptotically equivalent, but that  $\hat{S}_{NA}$  will provide larger estimates than  $\hat{S}_{KM}$  in smaller samples (Colosimo et al. 2002). In practice, the Kaplan-Meier is the most widely utilised non-parametric estimator in survival analysis and is the simplest estimator that yields consistent estimation of a survival distribution; it is therefore a natural, and commonly utilised, 'baseline' model (Harald Binder and Schumacher 2008; Herrmann et al. 2021; Huang et al. 2020; P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019): estimators that other models should be 'judged' against to ascertain their overall performance (Chapter 5).

Not only can these estimators be used for analytical comparison, but they also provide intuitive methods for graphical calibration of models (Section 7.0.2). These models are never studied for prognosis directly but as baselines, components of complex models (Chapter 15), or graphical tools (Habibi et al. 2018; Jager et al. 2008; Moghimi-dehkordi et al. 2008). The reason for this is due to them having poor predictive performance as a result of omitting explanatory variables in fitting. Moreover, if the data follows a particular distribution, parametric methods will be more efficient (P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019).

### Conditional Estimators

The Kaplan-Meier and Nelson-Aalen estimators are simple to compute and provide good estimates for the survival time distribution but in many cases they may be overly-simplistic. Conditional non-parametric estimators include the advantages described above (no assumptions about underlying data distribution) but also allow for conditioning the estimation on the covariates. This is particularly useful when estimating a censoring distribution that

may depend on the data (Chapter 5). However predictive performance of conditional non-parametric estimators decreases as the number of covariates increases, and these models are especially poor when censoring is feature-dependent (Gerds and Schumacher 2006).

The most widely used conditional non-parametric estimator for survival analysis is the Akritas estimator (Akritas 1994) defined by<sup>1</sup>

$$\hat{S}(\tau|X^*, \mathcal{D}_{train}, \lambda) = \prod_{j: T_j \leq \tau, \Delta_j = 1} \left( 1 - \frac{K(X^*, X_j | \lambda)}{\sum_{l=1}^n K(X^*, X_l | \lambda) \mathbb{I}(T_l \geq T_j)} \right)$$

where  $K$  is a kernel function, usually  $K(x, y | \lambda) = \mathbb{I}(|\hat{F}_X(x) - \hat{F}_X(y)| < \lambda)$ ,  $\lambda \in (0, 1]$ ,  $\hat{F}_X$  is the empirical distribution function of the training data,  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ , and  $\lambda$  is a hyper-parameter. The estimator can be interpreted as a conditional Kaplan-Meier estimator which is computed on a neighbourhood of subjects closest to  $X^*$  (Blanche, Dartigues, and Jacqmin-Gadda 2013). To account for tied survival times, the following adaptation of the estimator is utilised (Blanche, Dartigues, and Jacqmin-Gadda 2013)

$$\hat{S}(\tau|X^*, \mathcal{D}_{train}, \lambda) = \prod_{t \in \mathcal{U}_O, t \leq \tau} \left( 1 - \frac{\sum_{j=1}^n K(X^*, X_j | \lambda) \mathbb{I}(T_j = t, \Delta_j = 1)}{\sum_{j=1}^n K(X^*, X_j | \lambda) \mathbb{I}(T_j \geq t)} \right) \quad (11.3)$$

If  $\lambda = 1$  then  $K(\cdot | \lambda) = 1$  and the estimator is identical to the Kaplan-Meier estimator.

The non-parametric nature of the model is highlighted in (Equation 11.3), in which both the fitting and predicting stages are combined into a single equation. A new observation,  $X^*$ , is compared to its nearest neighbours from a training dataset,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ , without a separated fitting procedure. One could consider splitting fitting and predicting in order to clearly separate between training and testing data. In this case, the fitting procedure is the estimation of  $\hat{F}_X$  on training data and the prediction is given by (Equation 11.3) with  $\hat{F}_X$  as an argument. This separated fit/predict method is implemented in **survivalmodels** (R. Sonabend 2020). As with other non-parametric estimators, the Akritas estimator can still be considered transparent and accessible. With respect to predictive performance, the Akritas estimator has more explanatory power than non-parametric estimators due to conditioning on covariates, however this is limited to a very small number of variables and therefore this estimator is still best placed as a conditional baseline.

### 11.1.2 Continuous Ranking and Semi-Parametric Models: Cox PH

The Cox Proportional Hazards (CPH) (Cox 1972), or Cox model, is likely the most widely known semi-parametric model and the most studied survival model (Habibi et al. 2018; Moghimi-dehkordi et al. 2008; Reid 1994; P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019). The Cox model assumes that the hazard for a subject is proportionally related to their explanatory variables,  $X_1, \dots, X_n$ , via some baseline hazard that all subjects in a given dataset share (‘the PH assumption’). The hazard function in the Cox PH model is defined by

$$h(\tau|X_i) = h_0(\tau) \exp(X_i \beta)$$

where  $h_0$  is the non-negative *baseline hazard function* and  $\beta = \beta_1, \dots, \beta_p$  where  $\beta_i \in \mathbb{R}$  are coefficients to be fit. Note the proportional hazards (PH) assumption can be seen as

<sup>1</sup>Arguments and parameters are separated in function signatures by a pipe, ‘|’, where variables to the left are parameters (free variables) and those to the right are arguments (fixed). In this equation,  $\tau$  is a parameter to be set by the user, and  $X^*, \mathcal{D}_{train}, \lambda$  are fixed arguments. This could therefore be simplified to  $\hat{S}(\tau)$  to only include free variables.

the estimated hazard,  $h(\tau|X_i)$ , is directly proportional to the model covariates  $\exp(X_i\beta)$ . Whilst a form is assumed for the ‘risk’ component of the model,  $\exp(X_i\beta)$ , no assumptions are made about the distribution of  $h_0$ , hence the model is semi-parametric.

The coefficients,  $\beta$ , are estimated by maximum likelihood estimation of the ‘partial likelihood’ (Cox 1975), which only makes use of ordered event times and does not utilise all data available (hence being ‘partial’). The partial likelihood allows study of the informative  $\beta$ -parameters whilst ignoring the nuisance  $h_0$ . The predicted linear predictor,  $\hat{\eta} := X^*\hat{\beta}$ , can be computed from the estimated  $\hat{\beta}$  to provide a ranking prediction.

Inspection of the model is also useful without specifying the full hazard by interpreting the coefficients as ‘hazard ratios’. Let  $p = 1$  and  $\hat{\beta} \in \mathbb{R}$  and let  $X_i, X_j \in \mathbb{R}$  be the covariates of two training observations, then the *hazard ratio* for these observations is the ratio of their hazard functions,

$$\frac{h(\tau|X_i)}{h(\tau|X_j)} = \frac{h_0(\tau) \exp(X_i\hat{\beta})}{h_0(\tau) \exp(X_j\hat{\beta})} = \exp(\hat{\beta})^{X_i - X_j}$$

If  $\exp(\hat{\beta}) = 1$  then  $h(\tau|X_i) = h(\tau|X_j)$  and thus the covariate has no effect on the hazard. If  $\exp(\hat{\beta}) > 1$  then  $X_i > X_j \rightarrow h(\tau|X_i) > h(\tau|X_j)$  and therefore the covariate is positively correlated with the hazard (increases risk of event). Finally if  $\exp(\hat{\beta}) < 1$  then  $X_i > X_j \rightarrow h(\tau|X_i) < h(\tau|X_j)$  and the covariate is negatively correlated with the hazard (decreases risk of event).

Interpreting hazard ratios is known to be a challenge, especially by clinicians who require simple statistics to communicate to patients (Sashegyi and Ferry 2017; Spruance et al. 2004). For example the full interpretation of a hazard ratio of ‘2’ for binary covariate  $X$  would be: ‘assuming that the risk of death is constant at all time-points then the instantaneous risk of death is twice as high in a patient with  $X$  than without’. Simple conclusions are limited to stating if patients are at more or less risk than others in their cohort. Further disadvantages of the model also lie in its lack of real-world interpretability, these include (Reid 1994):

- the PH assumption may not be realistic and the risk of event may not be constant over time;
- the estimated baseline hazard from a non-parametric estimator is a discrete step-function resulting in a discrete survival distribution prediction despite time being continuous; and
- the estimated baseline hazard will be constant after the last observed time-point in the training set (Gelfand et al. 2000).

Despite these disadvantages, the model has been demonstrated to have excellent predictive performance and routinely outperforms (or at least does not underperform) sophisticated ML models (Michael F. Gensheimer and Narasimhan 2018; Luxhoj and Shyur 1997; Van Belle et al. 2011) (and (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021)). Its simple form and wide popularity mean that it is also highly transparent and accessible.

The next class of models address some of the Cox model disadvantages by making assumptions about the baseline hazard.

### 11.1.3 Conditional Distribution Predictions: Parametric Linear Models

#### Parametric Proportional Hazards

The CPH model can be extended to a fully parametric PH model by substituting the unknown baseline hazard,  $h_0$ , for a particular parameterisation. Common choices for dis-

tributions are Exponential, Weibull and Gompertz (John D. Kalbfleisch and Prentice 2011; P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019); their hazard functions are summarised in ((**tab-survivaldists?**)) along with the respective parametric PH model. Whilst an Exponential assumption leads to the simplest hazard function, which is constant over time, this is often not realistic in real-world applications. As such the Weibull or Gompertz distributions are often preferred. Moreover, when the shape parameter,  $\gamma$ , is 1 in the Weibull distribution or 0 in the Gompertz distribution, their hazards reduce to a constant risk ((Figure 11.1)). As this model is fully parametric, the model parameters can be fit with maximum likelihood estimation, with the likelihood dependent on the chosen distribution.

Table 11.2: Exponential, Weibull, and Gompertz hazard functions and PH specification.

| Distribution <sup>1</sup>     | $h_0(\tau)^2$                  | $h(\tau X_i)^3$                               |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|---|
| Exp( $\lambda$ )              | $\lambda$                      | $\lambda \exp(X_i\beta)$                      |
| Weibull( $\gamma, \lambda$ )  | $\lambda\gamma\tau^{\gamma-1}$ | $\lambda\gamma\tau^{\gamma-1} \exp(X_i\beta)$ |
| Gompertz( $\gamma, \lambda$ ) | $\lambda \exp(\gamma\tau)$     | $\lambda \exp(\gamma\tau) \exp(X_i\beta)$     |

\* 1. Distribution choices for baseline hazard.  $\gamma, \lambda$  are shape and scale parameters respectively.

\* 2. Baseline hazard function, which is the (unconditional) hazard of the distribution. \* 3. PH hazard function,  $h(\tau|X_i) = h_0(\tau) \exp(X_i\beta)$ .

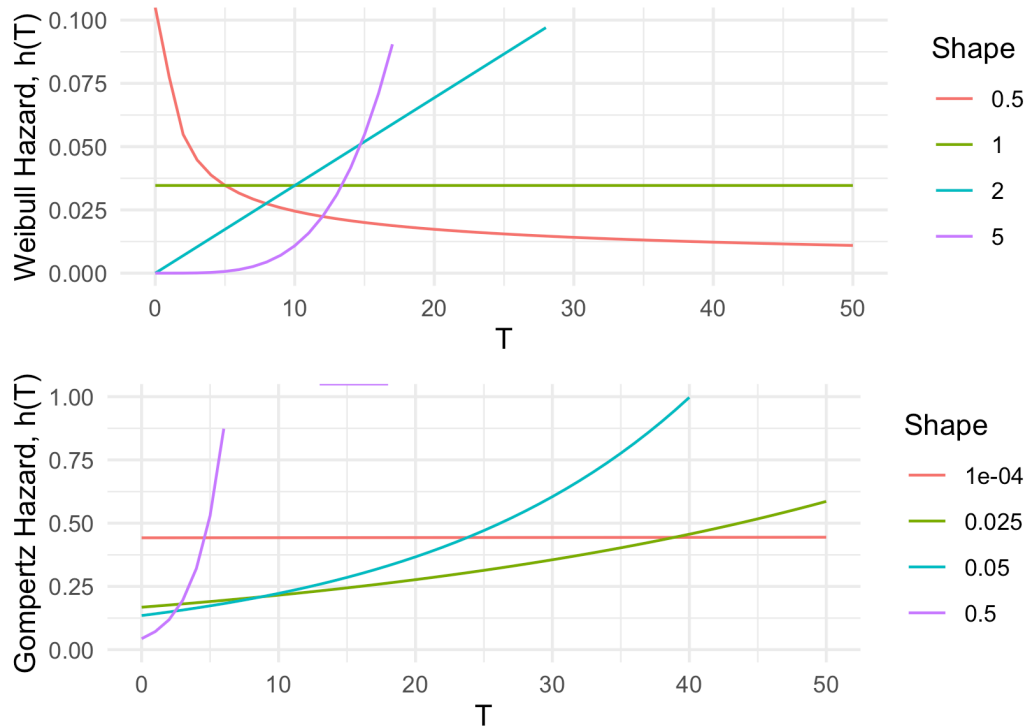


Figure 11.1: Comparing the hazard curves under Weibull and Gompertz distributions for varying values of the shape parameter; scale parameters are set so that each parametrisation has a median of 20. x-axes are time and y-axes are Weibull (top) and Gompertz (bottom) hazards as a function of time.

In the literature, the Weibull distribution tends to be favoured as the initial assumption for the survival distribution (Michael F. Gensheimer and Narasimhan 2018; Habibi et al. 2018; Hielscher et al. 2010; R. and J. 1968; Rahman et al. 2017), though Gompertz is often tested in death-outcome models for its foundations in modelling human mortality (Gompertz 1825). There exist many tests for checking the goodness-of-model-fit (Section 5.3) and the distribution choice can even be treated as a model hyper-parameter. Moreover it transpires that model inference and predictions are largely insensitive to the choice of distribution (Collett 2014; Reid 1994). In contrast to the Cox model, fully parametric PH models can predict absolutely continuous survival distributions, they do not treat the baseline hazard as a nuisance, and in general will result in more precise and interpretable predictions if the distribution is correctly specified (Reid 1994; Royston and Parmar 2002).

Whilst misspecification of the distribution tends not to affect predictions too greatly, PH models will generally perform worse when the PH assumption is not valid. PH models can be extended to include time-varying coefficients or model stratification (Cox 1972) but even with these adaptations the model may not reflect reality. For example, the predicted hazard in a PH model will be either monotonically increasing or decreasing but there are many scenarios where this is not realistic, such as when recovering from a major operation where risks tends to increase in the short-term before decreasing. Accelerated failure time models overcome this disadvantage and allow more flexible modelling, discussed next.

### Accelerated Failure Time

In contrast to the PH assumption, where a unit increase in a covariate is a multiplicative increase in the hazard rate, the Accelerated Failure Time (AFT) assumption means that a unit increase in a covariate results in an acceleration or deceleration towards death (expanded on below). The hazard representation of an AFT model demonstrates how the interpretation of covariates differs from PH models,

$$h(\tau|X_i) = h_0(\exp(-X_i\beta)\tau) \exp(-X_i\beta)$$

where  $\beta = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_p)$  are model coefficients. In contrast to PH models, the ‘risk’ component,  $\exp(-X_i\beta)$ , is the exponential of the *negative* linear predictor and therefore an increase in a covariate value results in a decrease of the predicted hazard. This representation also highlights how AFT models are more flexible than PH as the predicted hazard can be non-monotonic. For example the hazard of the Log-logistic distribution ((Figure 11.2)) is highly flexible depending on chosen parameters. Not only can the AFT model offer a wider range of shapes for the hazard function but it is more interpretable. Whereas covariates in a PH model act on the hazard, in an AFT they act on time, which is most clearly seen in the log-linear representation,

$$\log Y_i = \mu + \alpha_1 X_{i1} + \alpha_2 X_{i2} + \dots + \alpha_p X_{ip} + \sigma \epsilon_i$$

where  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$  are location and scale parameters respectively,  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_p$  are model coefficients, and  $\epsilon_i$  is a random error term. In this case a one unit increase in covariate  $X_{ij}$  means a  $\alpha_j$  increase in the logarithmic survival time. For example if  $\exp(X_i\alpha) = 0.5$  then  $i$  ‘ages’ at double the baseline ‘speed’. Or less abstractly if studying the time until death from cancer then  $\exp(X_i\alpha) = 0.5$  can be interpreted as ‘the entire process from developing tumours to metastasis and eventual death in subject  $i$  is twice as fast than the normal’, where ‘normal’ refers to the baseline when all covariates are 0.

Specifying a particular distribution for  $\epsilon_i$  yields a fully-parametric AFT model. Common distribution choices include Weibull, Exponential, Log-logistic, and Log-Normal (John D.

Kalbfleisch and Prentice 2011; P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019). The Buckley-James estimator (Buckley and James 1979) is a semi-parametric AFT model that non-parametrically estimates the distribution of the errors however this model has no theoretical justification and is rarely fit in practice (Wei 1992). The fully-parametric model has theoretical justifications, natural interpretability, and can often provide a better fit than a PH model, especially when the PH assumption is violated (Patel, Kay, and Rowell 2006; Qi 2009; Zare et al. 2015).

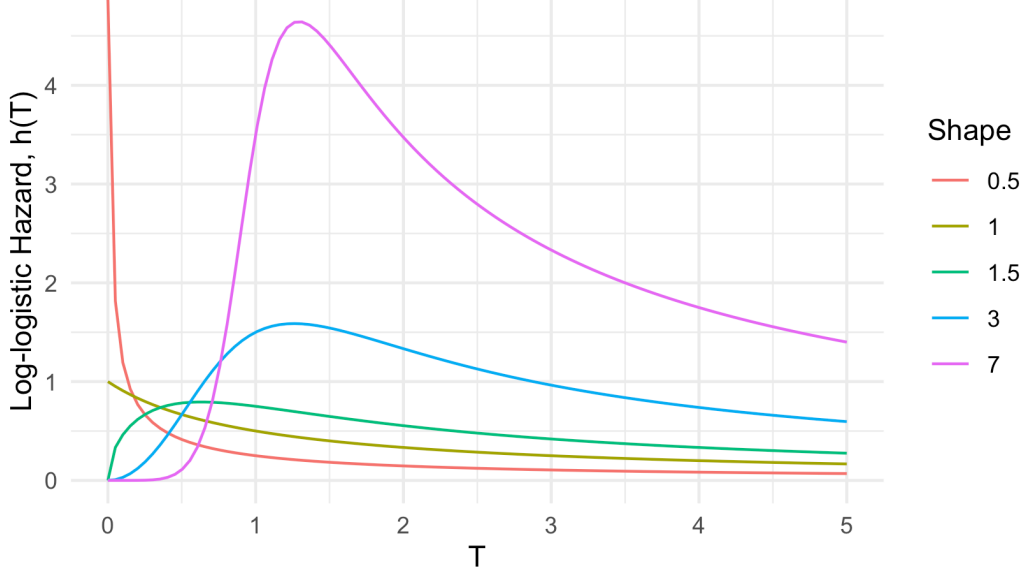


Figure 11.2: Log-logistic hazard curves with a fixed scale parameter of 1 and a changing shape parameter. x-axis is time and y-axis is the log-logistic hazard as a function of time.

### Proportional Odds

Proportional odds (PO) models (Bennett 1983) fit a proportional relationship between covariates and the odds of survival beyond a time  $\tau$ ,

$$O_i(\tau) = \frac{S_i(\tau)}{F_i(\tau)} = O_0(\tau) \exp(X_i \beta)$$

where  $O_0$  is the baseline odds.

In this model, a unit increase in a covariate is a multiplicative increase in the odds of survival after a given time and the model can be interpreted as estimating the log-odds ratio. There is no simple closed form expression for the partial likelihood of the PO model and hence in practice a Log-logistic distribution is usually assumed for the baseline odds and the model is fit by maximum likelihood estimation on the full likelihood (Bennett 1983).

Perhaps the most useful feature of the model is convergence of hazard functions (Kirmani and Gupta 2001), which states  $h_i(\tau)/h_0(\tau) \rightarrow 1$  as  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ . This property accurately reflects real-world scenarios, for example if comparing chemotherapy treatment on advanced cancer survival rates, then it is expected that after a long period (say 10 years) the difference in risk between groups is likely to be negligible. This is in contrast to the PH model that assumes the hazard ratios are constant over time, which is rarely a reflection of reality.



In practice, the PO model is harder to fit and is less flexible than PH and AFT models, both of which can also produce odds ratios. This may be a reason for the lack of popularity of the PO model, in addition there is limited off-shelf implementations (Collett 2014). Despite PO models not being commonly utilised, they have formed useful components of neural networks (`?@sec-surv-ml-models-nn`) and flexible parametric models (below).

### Flexible Parametric Models – Splines

Royston-Parmar flexible parametric models (Royston and Parmar 2002) extend PH and PO models by estimating the baseline hazard with natural cubic splines. The model was designed to keep the form of the PH or PO methods but without the semi-parametric problem of estimating a baseline hazard that does not reflect reality (see above), or the parametric problem of misspecifying the survival distribution.

To provide an interpretable, informative and smooth hazard, natural cubic splines are fit in place of the baseline hazard. The crux of the method is to use splines to model time on a log-scale and to either estimate the log cumulative Hazard for PH models,  $\log H(\tau|X_i) = \log H_0(\tau) + X_i\beta$ , or the log Odds for PO models,  $\log O(\tau|X_i) = \log O_0(\tau) + X_i\beta$ , where  $\beta$  are model coefficients to fit,  $H_0$  is the baseline cumulative hazard function and  $O_0$  is the baseline odds function. For the flexible PH model, a Weibull distribution is the basis for the baseline distribution and a Log-logistic distribution for the baseline odds in the flexible PO model.  $\log H_0(\tau)$  and  $\log O_0(\tau)$  are estimated by natural cubic splines with coefficients fit by maximum likelihood estimation. The standard full likelihood is optimised, full details are not provided here. Between one and three internal knots are recommended for the splines and the placement of knots does not greatly impact upon the fitted model (Royston and Parmar 2002).

Advantages of the model include being: interpretable, flexible, can be fit with time-dependent covariates, and it returns a continuous function. Moreover many of the parameters, including the number and position of knots, are tunable, although Royston and Parmar advised against tuning and suggest often only one internal knot is required (Royston and Parmar 2002). A recent simulation study demonstrated that even with an increased number of knots (up to seven degrees of freedom), there was little bias in estimation of the survival and hazard functions (Bower et al. 2019). Despite its advantages, a 2018 review (Ng et al. 2018) found only twelve instances of published flexible parametric models since Royston and Parmar’s 2002 paper, perhaps because it is more complex to train, has a less intuitive fitting procedure than alternatives, and has limited off-shelf implementations; i.e. is less transparent and accessible than parametric alternatives.

The PH and AFT models are both very transparent and accessible, though require slightly more expert knowledge than the CPH in order to specify the ‘correct’ underlying probability distribution. Interestingly whilst there are many papers comparing PH and AFT models to one another using in-sample metrics (Section 5.3) such as AIC (Georgousopoulou et al. 2015; Habibi et al. 2018; Moghimi-dehkordi et al. 2008; Zare et al. 2015), no benchmark experiments could be found for out-of-sample performance. PO and spline models are less transparent than PH and AFT models and are even less accessible, with very few implementations of either. No conclusions can be drawn about the predictive performance of PO or spline models due to a lack of suitable benchmark experiments.



---

# Machine Learning Survival Models

---

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

---

## 12.1 A Survey of Machine Learning Models for Survival Analysis

These next sections provide a technical, critical survey of machine learning models proposed for survival analysis with the focus on the ‘simpler’ setup of non-competing risks. Models are separated into their different ‘classes’ (3), which exists as a natural taxonomy in machine learning. Each class review is then further separated by first discussing the simpler and more standard regression setting, before expanding into their survival framework. The focus is once again on the different predict types of the model, which enables clear exposition and discussion around how some areas have successfully dealt with the survival predictive problem, whereas others have fallen short.

This is not the first survey of machine learning models for survival analysis. A recent 2017 survey (P. Wang, Li, and Reddy 2019) focused on covering the breadth of machine learning models for survival analysis and this survey is recommended to the reader as a strong starting point to understand which ML models are available for survival analysis. However whilst this provides a comprehensive review and a ‘big-picture’ view, there is no discussion about how successful the discussed models are in solving the survival task.

A comprehensive survey of neural networks was presented by Schwarzer *et al.* (2000) (Schwarzer, Vach, and Schumacher 2000) in which the authors collected the many ways in which neural networks have been ‘misused’ in the context of survival analysis. This level of criticism is vital in the context of survival analysis and healthcare data as transparency and understanding are often prioritised over predictive performance. Whilst the survey in this book will try not to be as critical as the Schwarzer review, it will aim to discuss models and how well they actually solve the survival problem.

Historically, surveys have focused primarily on predictive performance, which is generally preferred for complex classification and regression tasks. However in the context of survival analysis, transparency is of the utmost importance and any model that does not solve the task it claims to, despite strong predictive performance, can be considered sub-optimal.

The survey will also examine the accessibility of survival models. A model need not be open-source to be accessible, but it should be ‘user-friendly’ and not require expert cross-domain knowledge. For example, a neural network may require knowledge of complex model building, but if set-up correctly could be handled without medical or survival knowledge. Whereas a Gaussian Process requires knowledge of the model class, simulation, (usually) Bayesian modelling, and also survival analysis.

- (3) provides information about the models reviewed in this survey, including a model reference for use in the (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021) benchmark experiment, the predict types of the model, and in which R package it is implemented.

Table 12.1: Summarising the models discussed in (Section 12.1) by their model class and respective survival task.

| Class <sup>1</sup> | Name <sup>2</sup> | Authors (Year) <sup>3</sup>   | Task <sup>4</sup> | Implementation <sup>5</sup>   |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| RF                 | RRT               | LeBlanc and Crowley (1992)<br>(LeBlanc and Crowley 1992)                      | Rank              | <b>rpart</b> (Therneau and Atkinson 2019)   |
| RF                 | RSDF-DEV          | Hothorn <i>et al.</i> (2004) (Hothorn et al. 2004)                            | Prob.             | <b>ipred</b> (Peters and Hothorn 2019)  |
| RF                 | RRF               | Ishwaran <i>et al.</i> (2004) (H. Ishwaran et al. 2004)                       | Rank              | -   |
| RF                 | RSCIFF            | Hothorn <i>et al.</i> (2006) (Hothorn et al. 2005)                            | Det., Prob.       | <b>party</b> (Hothorn, Hornik, and Zeileis 2006), <b>partykit</b> (Hothorn and Zeileis 2015)                  |
| RF                 | RSDF-STAT         | Ishwaran <i>et al.</i> (2008) (B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008)                    | Prob.             | <b>randomForestSRC</b> (H. Ishwaran and Kogalur 2018), <b>ranger</b> (Wright and Ziegler 2017)                |
| GBM                | GBM-COX           | Ridgeway (1999) (Ridgeway 1999) & Buhlmann (2007) (Buhlmann and Hothorn 2007) | Prob.             | <b>mboost</b> (Hothorn et al. 2020), <b>xgboost</b> (T. Chen et al. 2020), <b>gbm</b> (Greenwell et al. 2019) |
| GBM                | CoxBoost          | Binder & Schumacher (2008) (Harald Binder and Schumacher 2008)                | Prob.             | <b>CoxBoost</b> (Harold Binder 2013)  |

| Class <sup>1</sup> | Name <sup>2</sup> | Authors (Year) <sup>3</sup>   | Task <sup>4</sup> | Implementation <sup>5</sup>             |
|--------------------|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| GBM                | GBM-AFT           | Schmid & Hothorn (2008) (Schmid and Hothorn 2008b)  | Det.              | <b>mboost</b> , <b>xgboost</b>          |
| GBM                | GBM-BUJAR         | Wang & Wang (2010) (Z. Wang and Wang 2010)  | Det.              | <b>bujar</b> (Z. Wang 2019)             |
| GBM                | GBM-GEH           | Johnson & Long (2011) (Johnson and Long 2011)   | Det.              | <b>mboost</b>                           |
| GBM                | GBM-UNO           | Mayr & Schmid (2014) (Mayr and Schmid 2014)   | Rank              | <b>mboost</b>                           |
| SVM                | SVCR              | Shivaswamy <i>et al.</i> (2007) (Shivaswamy, Chu, and Jansche 2007)   | Det.              | <b>survivalsvm</b> (Fouodo et al. 2018) |
| SVM                | SSVM-Rank         | Van Belle <i>et al.</i> (2007) (Van Belle et al. 2007)  | Rank              | <b>survivalsvm</b>                      |
| SVM                | SVRc              | Khan and Zubek (2008) (Khan and Bayer Zubek 2008)   | Det.              | -                                       |
| SVM                | SSVM-Hybrid       | Van Belle (2011) (Van Belle et al. 2011)  | Det.              | <b>survivalsvm</b>                      |
| SVM                | SSVR-MRL          | Goli <i>et al.</i> (2016) (Goli, Mahjub, Faradmal, and Soltanian 2016; Goli, Mahjub, Faradmal, Mashayekhi, et al. 2016) | Det.              | -                                       |
| ANN                | ANN-CDP           | Liestøl <i>et al.</i> (1994) (Liestøl, Andersen, and Andersen 1994)   | Prob.             | -                                       |
| ANN                | ANN-COX           | Faraggi and Simon (1995) (Faraggi and Simon 1995)   | Rank              | -                                       |
| ANN                | PLANN             | Biganzoli <i>et al.</i> (1998) (Biganzoli et al. 1998)  | Prob.             | -                                       |
| ANN                | COX-NNET          | Ching <i>et al.</i> (2018) (Ching, Zhu, and Garmire 2018)   | Prob.             | <b>cox-nnet*</b> (Ching 2015)           |

| Class <sup>1</sup> | Name <sup>2</sup> | Authors (Year) <sup>3</sup>  | Task <sup>4</sup> | Implementation <sup>5</sup>                           |
|--------------------|-------------------|--|-------------------|---|
| ANN                | DeepSurv          | Katzman <i>et al.</i> (2018) (Katzman et al. 2018)                         | Prob.             | <b>survivalmodels</b> (R. Sonabend 2020)              |
| ANN                | DeepHit           | Lee <i>et al.</i> (2018) (C. Lee et al. 2018)                              | Prob.             | <b>survivalmodels</b>                                 |
| ANN                | Nnet-survival     | Gensheimer & Narasimhan (2019) (Michael F. Gensheimer and Narasimhan 2019) | Prob.             | <b>survivalmodels</b>                                 |
| ANN                | Cox-Time          | Kvamme <i>et al.</i> (2019) (Kvamme, Borgan, and Scheel 2019)              | Prob.             | <b>survivalmodels</b>                                 |
| ANN                | PC-Hazard         | Kvamme & Borgan (2019) ( <b>Kvamme2019?</b> )                              | Prob.             | <b>survivalmodels</b>                                 |
| ANN                | RankDeepSurv      | Jing <i>et al.</i> (2019) (Jing et al. 2019)                               | Det.              | <b>RankDeepSurv</b> <sup>*,†</sup> (Jing et al. 2018) |
| ANN                | DNNSurv           | Zhao & Fend (2020) (Zhao and Feng 2020)                                    | Prob.             | <b>survivalmodels</b>                                 |

\* 1. Model Class. RSF – Random Survival Forest; GBM – Gradient Boosting Machine; SVM – Support Vector Machine; ANN – Artificial Neural Network. There is some abuse of notation here as some of the RSFs are actually decision trees and some GBMs do not use gradient boosting. \* 2. Model identifier used in this section and (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021). \* 3. Authors and year of publication, for RSFs this is the paper most attributed to the algorithm. \* 4. Survival task type: Deterministic (Det.), Probabilistic (Prob.), Ranking (Rank). \* 5. If available in R then the package in which the model is implemented, otherwise ‘\*’ signifies a model is only available in Python. With the exception of DNNSurv, all ANNs in **survivalmodels** are implemented from the Python package **pycox** (Kvamme 2018) with **reticulate** (Ushey, Allaire, and Tang 2020). \* † – Code available to create model but not implemented ‘off-shelf’.

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

---

## 13.1 Random Forests

### 13.1.1 Random Forests for Regression

Random forests are a composite algorithm built by fitting many simpler component models, decision trees, and then averaging the results of predictions from these trees. Decision trees are first briefly introduced before the key ‘bagging’ algorithm that composes these trees to a random forest. Woodland terminology is used throughout this subsection.

#### Decision Trees

Decision trees are a common model class in machine learning and have the advantage of being (relatively) simple to implement and highly interpretable. A decision tree takes a set of inputs and a given *splitting rule* in order to create a series of splits, or branches, in the tree that culminates in a final *leaf*, or *terminal node*. Each terminal node has a corresponding prediction, which for regression is usually the sample mean of the training outcome data. This is made clearer by example, (Figure 13.1) demonstrates a decision tree predicting the miles per gallon (`mpg`) of a car from the `mtcars` (Henderson and Velleman 1981) dataset. With this tree a new prediction is made by feeding the input variables from the top to the bottom, for example given new data,  $x = \{wt = 3, disp = 250\}$ , then in the first split the right branch is taken as `wt = 3 > 2.32` and in the second split the left branch is taken as `disp = 250 ≤ 258`, therefore the new data point ‘lands’ in the final leaf and is predicted to have an `mpg` of 20.8. This value of 20.8 arises as the sample mean of `mpg` for the 11 (which can be seen in the box) observations in the training data who were sorted into this terminal node. Algorithmically, as splits are always binary, predictions are simply a series of conditional logical statements.

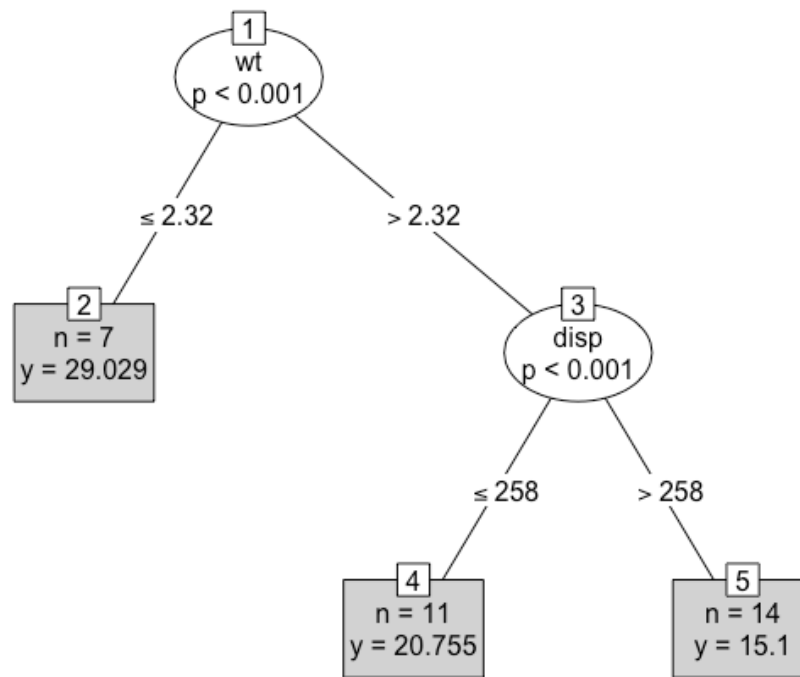


Figure 13.1: Demonstrating classification trees using the `mtcars` (Henderson and Velleman 1981) dataset and the `party` (Hothorn, Hornik, and Zeileis 2006) package. Ovals are leaves, which indicate the variable that is being split. Edges are branches, which indicate the cut-off at which the variable is split. Rectangles are terminal nodes and include information about the number of training observations in the node and the terminal node prediction.



### Splitting Rules

Precisely how the splits are derived and which variables are utilised is determined by the splitting rule.<sup>1</sup> In regression, the most common splitting rule is to select the cut-off for a given variable that minimises the mean squared error in each hypothetical resultant leaf. The goal is to find the variable and cutoff that leads to the greatest difference between the two resultant leaves and thus the maximal homogeneity within each leaf. For all decision tree and random forest algorithms going forward, let  $L$  denote some leaf, then let  $L_{xy}, L_x, L_y$  respectively be the set of observations, features, and outcomes in leaf  $L$ . Let  $L_{y,i}$  be the  $i$ th outcome in  $L_y$  and finally let  $L_{\bar{y}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n L_{y,i}$ . To simplify notation,  $i \in L$  is taken to be equivalent to  $i \in \{i : X_i \in L_X\}$ , i.e. the indices of the observations in leaf  $L$ .

Let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  be some cutoff parameter and let  $L_{xy}^a(j, c) := \{(X_i, Y_i) | X_{ij} < c, i = 1, \dots, n\}$ ,  $L_{xy}^b(j, c) = \{(X_i, Y_i) | X_{ij} \geq c, i = 1, \dots, n\}$  be the two leaves containing the set of observations resulting from partitioning variable  $j$  at cutoff  $c$ . Then a split is determined by finding the arguments,  $(j^*, c^*)$  that minimise the sum of the mean squared errors (MSE) in both leaves (James et al. 2013),

$$(j^*, c^*) = \underset{j, c}{\operatorname{argmin}} \sum_{y \in L_{xy}^a(j, c)} (y - L_{\bar{y}}^a(j, c))^2 + \sum_{y \in L_{xy}^b(j, c)} (y - L_{\bar{y}}^b(j, c))^2 \quad (13.1)$$

This method is repeated from the first branch of the tree down to the very last such that observations are included in a given leaf  $L$  if they satisfy all conditions from all previous branches; features may be considered multiple times in the growing process. This is an intuitive method as minimising the above sum results in the set of observations within each individual leaf being as similar as possible, thus as an observation is passed down the tree, it becomes more similar to the subsequent leaves, eventually landing in a leaf containing homogeneous observations. Controlling how many variables to consider at each split and how many splits to make are determined by hyper-parameter tuning.

Decision trees are a powerful method for high-dimensional data as only a small sample of variables will be used for growing a tree, and therefore they are also useful for variable importance by identifying which variables were utilised in growth (other importance methods are also available). Decision trees are also highly interpretable, as demonstrated by (Figure 13.1). The recursive pseudo-algorithm in ((**alg-dt-fit?**)) demonstrates the simplicity in growing a decision tree (again methods such as pruning are omitted).

---

**Algorithm 1** Fitting a decision tree.

**\*\*Input\*\*** Training data,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ . Splitting rule,  $SR$ .

**\*\*Output\*\*** Fitted decision tree,  $\hat{g}$ .

---

- 1: Compute  $(j^*, c^*)$  as the optimisers of  $SR$  (e.g. (@eq-dt-min)) to create the initial leaf and branches.
  - 2: Repeat step 1 on all subsequent branches until a stopping rule is reached.
  - 3: Return the fitted tree,  $\hat{g}$ , as the series of branches.
- 

### Stopping Rules

The ‘stopping rule’ in ((**alg-dt-fit?**)) is usually a condition on the number of observations in each leaf such that leaves will continue to be split until some minimum number of observations has been reached in a leaf. Other conditions may be on the ‘depth’ of the tree,

---

<sup>1</sup>Other methods for growing trees such as pruning are not discussed here as they are less relevant to random forests, which are primarily of interest. Instead see (e.g.) Breiman (1984) [Breiman1984].

which corresponds to the number of levels of splitting, for example the tree in (Figure 13.1) has a depth of 2 (the first level is not counted).

### Random Forests

Despite being more interpretable than other machine learning methods, decision trees usually have poor predictive performance, high variance and are not robust to changes in the data. As such, *random forests* are preferred to improve prediction accuracy and decrease variance. Random forests utilise bootstrap aggregation, or *bagging* (Breiman 1996), to aggregate many decision trees. A pseudo fitting algorithm is given in ((**alg-rsf-fit?**)).

---

**Algorithm 2** Fitting a random forest.

**\*\*Input\*\*** Training data,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ . Total number of trees,  $B \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$ .  
**\*\*Output\*\*** Fitted random forest,  $\hat{g}$ .

---

```

1: for  $b = 1, \dots, B$  do
2:   Create a bootstrapped sample of the data,  $D_b$ .
3:   Grow a decision tree,  $\hat{g}_b$ , on  $D_b$  with (@alg-dt-fit).
4: end for
5:  $\hat{g} \leftarrow \{\hat{g}_b\}_{b=1}^B$  return  $\hat{g}$ 

```

---

Prediction from a random forest follows by making predictions from the individual trees and aggregating the results by some function  $\sigma$  ((**alg-rsf-pred?**));  $\sigma$  is usually the sample mean for regression,

$$\hat{g}(X^*) = \sigma(\hat{g}_1(X^*), \dots, \hat{g}_B(X^*)) = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{g}_b(X^*)$$

where  $\hat{g}_b(X^*)$  is the terminal node prediction from the  $b$ th tree and  $B$  are the total number of grown trees (**'\$B\$' is commonly used instead of \$N\$** to note the relation to bootstrapped data).

---

**Algorithm 3** Predicting from a random forest.

**\*\*Input\*\*** Testing data  $X^* \sim \mathcal{X}$ , fitted forest  $\hat{g}$  with  $B \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  trees, aggregation method  $\sigma$ .  
**\*\*Output\*\*** Prediction,  $\hat{Y} \sim \mathcal{Y}$ .

---

```

1: for  $b = 1, \dots, B$  do
2:   'Drop'  $X^*$  down the tree  $\hat{g}_b$  individually to return a prediction  $\hat{g}_b(X^*)$ .
3: end for
4:  $\hat{Y} \leftarrow \sigma(\hat{g}_1(X^*), \dots, \hat{g}_B(X^*))$  return  $\hat{Y}$ 

```

---

Usually many (hundreds or thousands) trees are grown, which makes random forests robust to changes in data and 'confident' about individual predictions. Other advantages include having several tunable hyper-parameters, including: the number of trees to grow, the number of variables to include in a single tree, the splitting rule, and the minimum terminal node size. Machine learning models with many hyper-parameters, tend to perform better than other models as they can be fine-tuned to the data, which is why complex deep learning models are often the best performing. Although as a caveat: too many parameters can lead to over-fitting and tuning many parameters can take a long time and be highly intensive. Random forests lose the interpretability of decision trees and are considered 'black-box' models as individual predictions cannot be easily scrutinised.

### 13.1.2 Random Forests for Survival Analysis

Given time constraints and the scope of this book, this survey of random forests for survival analysis will primarily focus on ‘traditional’ decision trees and random forests and will not look at other sub-fields such as causal forests. A comprehensive review of random survival forests (RSFs) is provided in Bou-Hamad (2011) (Bou-Hamad, Larocque, and Ben-Ameur 2011), which includes extensions to time-varying covariates and different censoring types. In order to prevent overlap, this survey will focus primarily on methods that have off-shelf implementations, their prediction types, and how successfully these methods handle the problem of censoring. Random forests and decision trees for survival are termed from here as Random Survival Forests (RSFs) and Survival Decision Trees (SDTs) respectively.

Unlike other machine learning methods that may require complex changes to underlying algorithms, individual components of a random forest can be adapted without altering the fundamental algorithm. The principle random forest algorithm is unchanged for RSFs, the difference is in the choice of splitting rule and terminal node prediction, which both must be able to handle censoring. Therefore instead of discussing individual algorithms, the different choices of splitting rules and terminal node predictions are discussed, then combinations of these are summarised into five distinct algorithms.

#### 13.1.2.1 Splitting Rules

Survival trees and RSFs have been studied for the past four decades and whilst the amount of splitting rules to appear could be considered “numerous” (Bou-Hamad, Larocque, and Ben-Ameur 2011), only two broad classes are commonly utilised and implemented (H. Ishwaran and Kogalur 2018; Pölsterl 2020; Therneau and Atkinson 2019; Wright and Ziegler 2017). The first class rely on hypothesis tests, and primarily the log-rank test, to maximise dissimilarity between splits, the second class utilises likelihood-based measures. The first is discussed in more detail as this is common in practice and is relatively straightforward to implement and understand, moreover it has been demonstrated to outperform other splitting rules (Bou-Hamad, Larocque, and Ben-Ameur 2011). Likelihood rules are more complex and require assumptions that may not be realistic, these are discussed briefly.

#### Hypothesis Tests

The log-rank test statistic has been widely utilised as the ‘natural’ splitting-rule for survival analysis (Ciampi et al. 1986; B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008; LeBlanc and Crowley 1993; Segal 1988). The log-rank test compares the survival distributions of two groups and has the null-hypothesis that both groups have the same underlying risk of (immediate) death, i.e. identical hazard functions.

Let  $L^A$  and  $L^B$  be two leaves then using the notation above let  $h^A, h^B$  be the (true) hazard functions derived from the observations in the two leaves respectively. The log-rank hypothesis test is given by  $H_0 : h^A = h^B$  with test statistic (Segal 1988),

$$LR(L^A) = \frac{\sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{U}_D} (d_\tau^A - e_\tau^A)}{\sqrt{\sum_{\tau \in \mathcal{U}_D} v_\tau^A}}$$

where  $d_\tau^A$  is the observed number of deaths in leaf  $A$  at  $\tau$ ,

$$d_\tau^A := \sum_{i \in L^A} \mathbb{I}(T_i = \tau, \Delta_i = 1)$$

$e_\tau^A$  is the expected number of deaths in leaf  $A$  at  $\tau$ ,

$$e_\tau^A := \frac{n_\tau^A d_\tau}{n_\tau}$$

and  $v_\tau^A$  is the variance of the number of deaths in leaf  $A$  at  $\tau$ ,

$$v_\tau^A := e_\tau^A \left( \frac{n_\tau - d_\tau}{n_\tau} \right) \left( \frac{n_\tau - n_\tau^A}{n_\tau - 1} \right)$$

where  $\mathcal{U}_D$  is the set of unique death times across the data (in both leaves),  $n_\tau = \sum_i \mathbb{I}(T_i \geq \tau)$  is the number of observations at risk at  $\tau$  in both leaves,  $n_\tau^A = \sum_{i \in L^A} \mathbb{I}(T_i \geq \tau)$  is the number of observations at risk at  $\tau$  in leaf  $A$ , and  $d_\tau = \sum_i \mathbb{I}(T_i = \tau, \Delta_i = 1)$  is the number of deaths at  $\tau$  in both leaves.

Intuitively these results follow as the number of deaths in a leaf is distributed according to  $\text{Hyper}(n_\tau^A, n_\tau, d_\tau)$ . The same statistic results if  $L^B$  is instead considered. ((**alg-dt-fit?**)) follows for fitting decision trees with the log-rank splitting rule,  $SR$ , to be maximised.

The higher the log-rank statistic, the greater the dissimilarity between the two groups, thereby making it a sensible splitting rule for survival, moreover it has been shown that it works well for splitting censored data (LeBlanc and Crowley 1993).<sup>2</sup> When censoring is highly dependent on the outcome, the log-rank statistic does not perform well and is biased (Bland and Altman 2004), which tends to be true of the majority of survival models. Additionally, the log-rank test requires no knowledge about the shape of the survival curves or distribution of the outcomes in either group (Bland and Altman 2004), making it ideal for an automated process that requires no user intervention.

The log-rank *score* rule (Hothorn and Lausen 2003) is a standardized version of the log-rank rule that could be considered as a splitting rule, though simulation studies have demonstrated non-significant predictive performance when comparing the two (B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008).

Alternative dissimilarity measures and tests have also been suggested as splitting rules, including modified Kolmogorov-Smirnov test and Gehan-Wilcoxon tests (Ciampi et al. 1988). Simulation studies have demonstrated that both of these may have higher power and produce ‘better’ results than the log-rank statistic (Fleming et al. 1980). Despite this, these do not appear to be in common usage and no implementation could be found that include these.

#### Likelihood Based Rules {.unnumbered .unlisted} Likelihood ratio statistics, or deviance based splitting rules, assume a certain model form and thereby an assumption about the data. This may be viewed as an advantageous strategy, as it could arguably increase interpretability, or a disadvantage as it places restrictions on the data. For survival models, a full-likelihood can be estimated with a Cox form by estimating the cumulative hazard function (LeBlanc and Crowley 1992). LeBlanc and Crowley (1992) (LeBlanc and Crowley 1992) advocate for selecting the optimal split by maximising the full PH likelihood, assuming the cumulative hazard function,  $H$ , is known,

$$\mathcal{L} := \prod_{m=1}^M \prod_{i \in L^m} h_m(T_i)^{\Delta_i} \exp(-H_m(T_i))$$

<sup>2</sup>The results of this experiment are actually in LeBlanc’s unpublished 1989 PhD thesis and therefore it has to be assumed that LeBlanc is accurately conveying its results in this 1993 paper.

where  $M$  is the total number of terminal nodes,  $h_m$  and  $H_m$  are the (true) hazard and cumulative hazard functions in the  $m$ th node, and again  $L^m$  is the set of observations in terminal node  $m$ . Estimation of  $h_m$  and  $H_m$  are described with the associated terminal node prediction below.

The primary advantage of this method is that any off-shelf regression software with a likelihood splitting rule can be utilised without any further adaptation to model fitting by supplying this likelihood with required estimates. However the additional costs of computing these estimates may outweigh the benefits once the likelihood has been calculated, and this could be why only one implementation of this method has been found (Bou-Hamad, Larocque, and Ben-Ameur 2011; Therneau and Atkinson 2019).

### Other Splitting Rules

As well as likelihood and log-rank splitting rules, other papers have studied comparison of residuals (Therneau, Grambsch, and Fleming 1990), scoring rules (H. Ishwaran and Kogalur 2018), and distance metrics (Gordon and Olshen 1985). These splitting rules work similarly to the mean squared error in the regression setting, in which the score should be minimised across both leaves. The choice of splitting rule is usually data-dependent and can be treated as a hyper-parameter for tuning. However if there is a clear goal in prediction, then the choice of splitting rule can be informed by the prediction type. For example, if the goal is to maximise separation, then a log-rank splitting rule to maximise homogeneity in terminal nodes is a natural starting point. Whereas if the goal is to estimate the linear predictor of a Cox PH model, then a likelihood splitting rule with a Cox form may be more sensible.

#### 13.1.2.2 Terminal Node Prediction

Only two terminal node predictions appear in common usage.

##### Predict: Ranking

Terminal node ranking predictions for survival trees and forests have been limited to those that use a likelihood-based splitting rule and assume a PH model form (H. Ishwaran et al. 2004; LeBlanc and Crowley 1992). In model fitting the likelihood splitting rule model attempts to fit the (theoretical) PH model  $h_m(\tau) = h_0(\tau)\theta_m$  for  $m \in 1, \dots, M$  where  $M$  is the total number of terminal nodes and  $\theta_m$  is a parameter to estimate. The model returns predictions for  $\exp(\hat{\theta}_m)$  where  $\hat{\theta}_m$  is the estimate of  $\theta_m$ . This is estimated via an iterative procedure in which in iteration  $j + 1$ ,  $\hat{\theta}_m^{j+1}$  is estimated by

$$\hat{\theta}_m^{j+1} = \frac{\sum_{i \in L^m} \Delta_i}{\sum_{i \in L^m} \hat{H}_0^j(T_i)}$$

where as before  $L^m$  is the set of observations in leaf  $m$  and

$$\hat{H}_0^j(\tau) = \frac{\sum_{i: T_i \leq \tau} \Delta_i}{\sum_{m=1}^M \sum_{\{i: i \in \mathcal{R}_\tau \cap L^a\}} \hat{\theta}_m^j}$$

which is repeated until some stopping criterion is reached. The same cumulative hazard is estimated for all nodes however  $\theta_m$  varies across nodes. This method lends itself naturally to a composition to a full distribution (Chapter 15) as it assumes a PH form and separately estimates the cumulative hazard and relative risk (`?@sec-surv-ml-models-ranfor-nov`), though no implementation of this composition could be found.

### Predict: Survival Distribution

The most common terminal node prediction appears to be predicting the survival distribution by estimating the survival function, using the Kaplan-Meier or Nelson-Aalen estimators, on the sample in the terminal node (Hothorn et al. 2004; B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008; LeBlanc and Crowley 1993; Segal 1988). Estimating a survival function by a non-parametric estimator is a natural choice for terminal node prediction as these are natural ‘baselines’ in survival, similarly to taking the sample mean in regression. The prediction for SDTs is straightforward, the non-parametric estimator is fit on all observations in each of the terminal nodes. This is adapted to RSFs by bagging the estimator across all decision trees (Hothorn et al. 2004). Using the Nelson-Aalen estimator as an example, let  $m$  be a terminal node in an SDT, then the terminal node prediction is given by,

$$\hat{H}_m(\tau) = \sum_{\{i: i \in L^m \cap T_i \leq \tau\}} \frac{d_i}{n_i} \quad (13.2)$$

where  $d_i$  and  $n_i$  are the number of events and observations at risk at time  $T_i$  in terminal node  $m$ . Ishwaran (B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008) defined the bootstrapped Nelson-Aalen estimator as

$$\hat{H}_{Boot}(\tau) = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{H}_{m,b}(\tau), \quad m \in 1, \dots, M \quad (13.3)$$

where  $B$  is the total number of bootstrapped estimators,  $M$  is the number of terminal nodes, and  $\hat{H}_{m,b}$  is the cumulative hazard for the  $m$ th terminal node in the  $b$ th tree. The bootstrapped Kaplan-Meier estimator is calculated analogously. More generally these can be considered as a uniform mixture of  $B$  distributions (Chapter 15).

All implemented RSFs can now be summarised into the following five algorithms:

**RRT** {#mod-rrt}\ LeBlanc and Crowley’s (1992) (LeBlanc and Crowley 1992) survival decision tree uses a deviance splitting rule with a terminal node ranking prediction, which assumes a PH model form. These ‘relative risk trees’ (RRTs) are implemented in the package **rpart** (Therneau and Atkinson 2019). This model is considered the least accessible and transparent of all discussed in this section as: few implementations exist, it requires assumptions that may not be realistic, and predictions are harder to interpret than other models. Predictive performance of the model is expected to be worse than RSFs as this is a decision tree; this is confirmed in (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021).

**RRF** {#mod-rrf}\ Ishwaran *et al.* (2004) (H. Ishwaran et al. 2004) proposed a random forest framework for the relative risk trees, which makes a slight adaptation and applies the iteration of the terminal node prediction after the tree is grown as opposed to during the growing process. No implementation for these ‘relative risk forests’ (RRFs) could be found or any usage in the literature.

**RSDF-DEV** {#mod-rsdfdev}\ Hothorn *et al.* (2004) (Hothorn et al. 2004) expanded upon the RRT by introducing a bagging composition thus creating a random forest with a deviance splitting rule, again assuming a PH form. However the ranking prediction is altered to be a bootstrapped Kaplan-Meier prediction in the terminal node. This is implemented in **ipred** (Peters and Hothorn 2019). This model improves upon the accessibility and transparency of the RRT by providing a more straightforward and interpretable terminal node prediction. However, as this is a decision tree, predictive performance is again expected to be worse than the RSFs.

**RSCIFF** {#mod-rsciff}\ Hothorn *et al.* (Hothorn et al. 2005) studied a conditional inference framework in order to predict log-survival time. In this case the splitting rule is based

on an IPC weighted loss function, which allows implementation by off-shelf classical random forests. The terminal node predictions are a weighted average of the log-survival times in the node where weighting is determined by the Kaplan-Meier estimate of the censoring distribution. This ‘random survival conditional inference framework forest’ (RSCIFF) is implemented in **party** (Hothorn, Hornik, and Zeileis 2006) and **partykit** (Hothorn and Zeileis 2015), which additionally includes a distribution terminal node prediction via the bootstrapped Kaplan-Meier estimator. The survival tree analogue (SDCIFT) is implemented in the same packages. Implementation of the RSCIFF is complex, which is likely why all implementations (in the above packages) are by the same authors. The complexity of conditional inference forests may also be the reason why several reviews, including this one, mention (or completely omit) RSCIFFs but do not include any comprehensive details that explain the fitting procedure (Bou-Hamad, Larocque, and Ben-Ameur 2011; H. Wang and Li 2017). In this regard, it is hard to claim that RSCIFFs are transparent or accessible. Moreover the authors of the model state that random conditional inference forests are for “expert user[s] only and [their] current state is rather experimental” (Hothorn and Zeileis 2015). Finally with respect to model performance, there is evidence that they can outperform RSDFs (below) dependent on the data type (Nasejje et al. 2017) however no benchmark experiment could be found that compared them to other models.

**RSDF-STAT** `{#mod-rsdfstat}` \ Finally Ishwaran *et al.* (2008) (B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008) proposed the most general form of RSFs with a choice of hypothesis tests (log-rank and log-rank score) and survival measure (Brier, concordance) splitting rules, and a bootstrapped Nelson-Aalen terminal node prediction. These are implemented in **randomForestSRC** (H. Ishwaran and Kogalur 2018) and **ranger** (Wright and Ziegler 2017). There are several implementations of these models across programming languages, and extensive details for the fitting and predicting procedures, which makes them very accessible. The models utilise a standard random forest framework, which makes them transparent and familiar to those without expert Survival knowledge. Moreover they have been proven to perform well in benchmark experiments, especially on high-dimensional data (Herrmann et al. 2021; Spooner et al. 2020).

### 13.1.3 Conclusions

Random forests are a highly flexible algorithm that allow the various components to be adapted and altered without major changes to the underlying algorithm. The result is that relatively few R implementations of RSFs cover almost half a century’s worth of developments. The only algorithm that does not seem to be implemented is the relative risk forest.

A lack of accessibility, transparency, or proven performance makes RRT and RSDF-DEV a poor choice for model fitting. RSCIFF is potentially a powerful method with promising results in benchmark experiments, but even the authors recognise its complexity prevents it from being accessible. Ishwaran’s RSFs on the other hand are more user-friendly and suitable for model fitting and deployment. Simulation studies have demonstrated that RSFs can perform well even with high levels of censoring and there is evidence that on some datasets these can outperform a Cox PH (B. H. Ishwaran et al. 2008). Ishwaran’s model is highly flexible, and its implementation in software packages reflects this. Therefore one can still confidently conclude that random forests are a powerful algorithm in regression, classification, and survival analysis.





TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

---

## 14.1 Gradient Boosting Machines

### 14.1.1 Gradient Boosting Machines for Regression

Boosting is a machine learning strategy that can be applied to any model class. Similarly to random forests, boosting is an ‘ensemble’ method that creates a model from a ‘committee’ of learners. The committee is formed of ‘weak’ learners that make poor predictions individually, which creates a ‘slow learning’ approach (as opposed to ‘greedy’) that requires many iterations for a model to be a good fit to the data. Boosting models are similar to random forests in that both make predictions from a large committee of learners. However the two differ in how this committee is combined to a prediction. In random forest algorithms, each decision tree is grown independently and their predictions are combined by a simple mean calculation. In contrast, weak learners in a boosting model are fit sequentially and predictions are made by a linear combination of predictions from each learner. With respect to transparency, it is simpler to inspect 100 trees in a random forest, than it is to inspect 100 weak learners in a boosted model, though both are considered black-box models.

The best known boosting algorithm is likely AdaBoost (Freund and Schapire 1996), which is more generally a Forward Stagewise Additive Model (FSAM) with an exponential loss (Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001). Today, the most widely used boosting model is the Gradient Boosting Machine (GBM) (J. H. Friedman 2001).

#### Training a GBM

Pseudo-code for training a componentwise GBM is presented in (7). The term ‘componentwise’ is explained fully below, only this variation of GBM is presented as it is the most common in implementation (Greenwell et al. 2019; Hothorn et al. 2020). Line 1: the initial function is initialized as  $g_0 = 0$ ;<sup>1</sup> Line 2: iterate over boosting steps  $m = 1, \dots, M$  and; Line 3:

---

<sup>1</sup>Some algorithms may instead initialize  $g_0$  by finding the value that minimises the given loss function, however setting  $g_0 = 0$  appears to be the most common practice for componentwise GBMs.

randomly sample the training data,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ , to a smaller sample,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}^*$ , this may be ignored if  $\phi = 1$ ; Line 4: for all training observations in the reduced dataset,  $i \in \{i : X_i \in \mathcal{D}_{train}^*\}$ , compute the negative gradient,  $r_{im}$ , of the differentiable loss function,  $L$ , with respect to predictions from the previous iteration,  $g_{m-1}(X_i)$ ; Line 5: fit one weak learner for each feature,  $j = 1, \dots, p$ , in the training data, where the feature,  $X_{:,j}$ , is the single covariate and  $r_{im}$  are the labels; Line 6: select the optimal weak learner as the one that minimises the squared error between the prediction and the true gradient; Line 7: update the fitted model by adding the optimal weak learner with a shrinkage penalty,  $\nu$ ; Line 9: return the model updated in the final iteration as the fitted GBM.

---

**Algorithm 4** Training a componentwise Gradient Boosting Machine.

**\*\*Input\*\*** Training data,  $\mathcal{D}_{train} = \{(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)\}$ , where  $(X_i, Y_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, Y)$ . Differentiable loss,  $L$ . Hyper-parameters: sampling fraction,  $\phi \in (0, 1]$ ; step-size,  $\nu \in (0, 1]$ ; number of iterations,  $M \in \mathbb{R}_{>0}$ .

**\*\*Output\*\*** Boosted model,  $\hat{g}$ .

---

```

1: Initialize  $g_0 \leftarrow 0$ 
2: for  $m = 1, \dots, M$  do
3:    $\mathcal{D}_{train}^* \leftarrow$  Randomly sample  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$  w.p.  $\phi$ 
4:    $r_{im} \leftarrow -[\frac{\partial L(y_i, g_{m-1}(X_i))}{\partial g_{m-1}(X_i)}], i \in \{i : X_i \in \mathcal{D}_{train}^*\}$ 
5:   Fit  $p$  weak learners,  $w_j$  to  $(X_i, r_{im}), j = 1, \dots, p$ 
6:    $j^* \leftarrow \operatorname{argmin}_{j=1, \dots, p} \sum_{i \in \{i : X_i \in \mathcal{D}_{train}^*\}} (r_{im} - w_j(X_i))^2$ 
7:    $g_m \leftarrow g_{m-1} + \nu w_{j^*}$ 
8: end for
9:  $\hat{g} \leftarrow g_M$  return  $\hat{g}$ 

```

---

### Predicting with a GBM

In general, predictions from a trained GBM are simple to compute as the fitted model (and all individual weak learners) take the same inputs, which are passed sequentially to each of the weak learners. In (7), the fitted GBM is a single model, which is a linear combination of weak learners. Instead one could think of the returned model as a collection of the optimal weak learners, i.e. let  $w_{m;j^*}$  be the optimal weak learner from iteration  $m$  and let the fitted GBM (Line 9 (7)) be  $\hat{g} := \{w_{m;j^*}\}_{m=1}^M$ .<sup>2</sup> With this formulation, making predictions from the GBM can be demonstrated simply in ((**alg-surv-gbm-pred?**)).

---

**Algorithm 5** Predicting from a Gradient Boosting Machine.

**\*\*Input\*\*** Fitted GBM,  $\hat{g} := \{w_{m;j^*}\}_{m=1}^M$ , trained with step-size  $\nu$ . Testing data  $X^* \sim \mathcal{X}$ .

**\*\*Output\*\*** Prediction,  $\hat{Y} \sim \mathcal{Y}$ .

---

```

1: Initialize  $\hat{Y} = 0$ 
2: for  $m = 1, \dots, M$  do
3:    $\hat{Y} \leftarrow \hat{Y} + \nu w_{m;j^*}(X^*)$ 
4: end for return  $\hat{Y}$ 

```

---

The biggest advantages of boosting are firstly relatively few hyper-parameters, which all

---

<sup>2</sup>This formulation is computationally and mathematically identical to the formulation in (@alg-surv-gbm) and is practically more convenient for implementation, indeed this is the implementation in **mboost** [pkgmboost]. Despite this, the formulation in (@alg-surv-gbm) is common in the literature, which often conflates model training and predicting.

have a meaningful and intuitive interpretation, and secondly its modular nature means that, like random forests, relatively few parts need to be updated to derive a novel model. First the model components will be discussed and then the hyper-parameters. Once this has been established, deriving survival variants can be simply presented.

#### 14.1.1.1 Losses and Learners

##### Losses

Building a GBM requires selection of the loss to minimise,  $L$ , selection of weak learners,  $w_j$ , and a method to compare the weak learners to the loss gradient. The only constraint in selecting a loss,  $L$ , is that it must be differentiable with respect to  $g(X)$  (Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001). Of course a sensible loss should be chosen (a classification loss should not be used for regression) and different choices of losses will optimise different tasks.  $L_2$ -losses have been demonstrated to be effective for regression boosting, especially with high-dimensional data (Bühlmann and Yu 2003); this is referred to as  $L_2$ -boosting.

##### Weak Learners

- (4) is specifically a *componentwise* GBM (Bühlmann and Yu 2003), which means that each of the  $p$  weak learners is fit on a single covariate from the data. This method simplifies selecting the possible choices for the weak learners to selecting the class of weak learner (below). Additionally, componentwise GBMs provide a natural and interpretable feature selection method as selecting the optimal learner ((7), line 6) corresponds to selecting the feature that minimises the chosen loss in iteration  $m$ .

Only three weak, or ‘base’, learner classes are commonly used in componentwise GBMs (Hothorn et al. 2020; Z. Wang and Wang 2010). These are linear least squares (J. H. Friedman 2001), smoothing splines (Bühlmann and Yu 2003), and decision stumps (Bühlmann and Yu 2003; J. H. Friedman 2001). Let  $L$  be a loss with negative gradient for observation  $i$  in the  $m$ th iteration,  $r_{im}$ , and let  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$  be the usual training data. For linear least squares, an individual weak learner is fit by (J. H. Friedman 2001; Z. Wang and Wang 2010),

$$w_j(\mathcal{D}_{train}) = X_{:j} \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n X_{ij} r_{im}}{\sum_{i=1}^n (X_{ij})^2}$$

For smoothing splines, usually cubic splines are implemented, these fit weak learners as the minimisers of the equation (Bühlmann and Yu 2003),

$$w_j := \operatorname{argmin}_{g \in \mathcal{G}} \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (r_{im} - g(X_{ij}))^2 + \lambda \int (g''(u))^2 du$$

where  $g''$  is the second derivative of  $g$ ,  $\mathcal{G}$  is the set of functions,  $\mathcal{G} := \{g : g \text{ is twice continuously differentiable and } \int (g''(x))^2 dx < \infty\}$ , and  $\lambda$  is a hyper-parameter usually chosen so that the number of degrees of freedom, df, is small, with  $\text{df} \approx 4$  suggested (Bühlmann and Yu 2003; Schmid and Hothorn 2008a; Z. Wang and Wang 2010).

Finally for decision stumps (**(?@fig-surv-stump)**), a decision tree,  $w_j$ , is grown (**(alg-dt-fit?)**) on  $(X_{:j}, r_m)$  to depth one (equivalently to two terminal nodes) for each of the  $j = 1, \dots, p$  covariates (J. H. Friedman 2001).

### 14.1.1.2 Hyper-Parameters

The hyper-parameters in (7) are the ‘step-size’,  $\nu$ , the sampling fraction,  $\phi$ , and the number of iterations,  $M$ .

#### Number of iterations, $M$

The number of iterations is often claimed to be the most important hyper-parameter in GBMs and it has been demonstrated that as the number of iterations increases, so too does the model performance (with respect to a given loss on test data) up to a certain point of overfitting (Buhlmann 2006; Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001; Schmid and Hothorn 2008a). This is an intuitive result as the foundation of boosting rests on the idea that weak learners can slowly be combined to form a single powerful model. This is especially true in componentwise GBMs as time is required to learn which features are important. Finding the optimal value of  $M$  is critical as a value too small will result in poor predictions, whilst a value too large will result in model overfitting. Two primary methods have been suggested for finding the optimal value of  $M$ . The first is to find the  $M \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  that minimises a given measure based on the AIC (Akaike 1974), the second is the ‘usual’ empirical selection by nested cross-validation. In practice the latter method is usually employed.

#### Step-size, $\nu$

The step-size parameter ((7), line 7),  $\nu$ , is a shrinkage parameter that controls the contribution of each weak learner at each iteration. Several studies have demonstrated that GBMs perform better when shrinkage is applied and a value of  $\nu = 0.1$  is often suggested (Buhlmann and Hothorn 2007; Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001; J. H. Friedman 2001; D. K. K. Lee, Chen, and Ishwaran 2019; Schmid and Hothorn 2008a). The optimal values of  $\nu$  and  $M$  depend on each other, such that smaller values of  $\nu$  require larger values of  $M$ , and vice versa. This is intuitive as smaller  $\nu$  results in a slower learning algorithm and therefore more iterations are required to fit the model. Accurately selecting the  $M$  parameter is generally considered to be of more importance, and therefore a value of  $\nu$  is often chosen heuristically (e.g. the common value of 0.1) and then  $M$  is tuned by cross-validation and/or early-stopping.

#### Sampling Fraction, $\phi$

Motivated by the success of bagging in random forests, stochastic gradient boosting (J. Friedman 1999) randomly samples the data in each iteration. It appears that subsampling performs best when also combined with shrinkage (Hastie, Tibshirani, and Friedman 2001) and as with the other hyper-parameters, selection of  $\phi$  is usually performed by nested cross-validation.

## 14.1.2 Gradient Boosting Machines for Survival Analysis

In a componentwise GBM framework, adapting boosting to survival analysis requires only selecting a sensible choice of loss function  $L$ . Therefore fitting and predicting algorithms for componentwise survival GBMs are not discussed as these are fully described in algorithms (7) and ((**alg-surv-gbm-pred?**)) respectively. However, some GBMs in this section are not componentwise and therefore require some more detailed consideration. Interestingly, unlike other machine learning algorithms that historically ignored survival analysis, early GBM papers considered boosting in a survival context (Ridgeway 1999); though there appears to be a decade gap before further considerations were made in the survival setting. After that period, several developments by Binder, Schmid, and Hothorn, adapted component-

wise GBMs to a framework suitable for survival analysis. Their developments are covered exhaustively in the R packages **gbm** (Greenwell et al. 2019) and **mboost** (Hothorn et al. 2020). This survey continues with the predict type taxonomy.

#### 14.1.2.1 Cox Survival Models

All survival GBMs make ranking predictions and none are able to directly predict survival distributions. However, the GBMs discussed in this section all have natural compositions to distributions as they are modelled in the semi-parametric proportional hazards framework (Chapter 15). The models discussed in the next section can also be composed to distributions though the choice of composition is less clear and therefore they are listed as pure ‘ranking’ models.

**GBM-COX** `{#mod-gdcox} {#mod-gbmcox}` \ The ‘GBM-COX’ aims to predict the distribution of data following the PH assumption by estimating the coefficients of a Cox model in a boosting framework (Ridgeway 1999). The model attempts to predict  $\hat{g}(X^*) = \hat{\eta} := X^* \hat{\beta}$ , by minimising a suitable loss function. As the model assumes a PH specification, the natural loss to optimise is the Cox partial likelihood (Cox 1972, 1975), more specifically to minimise the negative partial log-likelihood,  $-l$ , where

$$l(\beta) = \sum_{i=1}^n \Delta_i \left[ \eta_i - \log \left( \sum_{j \in \mathcal{R}_{t_i}} \exp(\eta_j) \right) \right] \quad (14.1)$$

where  $\mathcal{R}_{t_i}$  is the set of patients at risk at time  $t_i$  and  $\eta_i = X_i \beta$ . The gradient of  $-l(\beta)$  at iteration  $m$  is

$$r_{im} := \Delta_i - \sum_{j=1}^n \Delta_j \frac{\mathbb{I}(T_i \geq T_j) \exp(g_{m-1}(X_i))}{\sum_{k \in \mathcal{R}_{t_j}} \exp(g_{m-1}(X_k))} \quad (14.2)$$

where  $g_{m-1}(X_i) = X_i \beta_{m-1}$ .

(5) now follows with the loss  $L := -l(\beta)$ .<sup>3</sup>

The GBM-COX is implemented in **mboost** (Hothorn et al. 2020) and has been demonstrated to perform well even when the data violates the PH assumption (Johnson and Long 2011). Despite being a black-box, GBMs are well-understood and individual weak learners are highly interpretable, thus making GBMs highly transparent. Several well-established software packages implement GBM-COX and those that do not tend to be very flexible with respect to custom implementations.

**CoxBoost** `{#mod-coxboost}` \ The CoxBoost algorithm boosts the Cox PH by optimising the penalized partial-log likelihood; additionally the algorithm allows for mandatory (or ‘forced’) covariates (Harald Binder and Schumacher 2008). In medical domains the inclusion of mandatory covariates may be essential, either for model interpretability, or due to prior expert knowledge. This is not a feature usually supported by boosting. CoxBoost deviates from (7) by instead using an offset-based approach for generalized linear models (Tutz and Binder 2007). This model has a non-componentwise and componentwise framework but only the latter is implemented by the authors (Harold Binder 2013) and discussed

<sup>3</sup>Early implementations and publications of the GBM algorithm [Friedman1999; Friedman2001] included an additional step to the algorithm in which a step size is estimated by line search. More recent research has determined that this additional step is unnecessary [Buhlmann2007] and the line search method does not appear to be used in practice.

here. Let  $\mathcal{J}_{mand}$  be the indices of the mandatory covariates to be included in all iterations,  $m = 1, \dots, M$ , then for an iteration  $m$  the indices to consider for fitting are the set

$$I_m = \{\{1\} \cup \mathcal{J}_{mand}, \dots, \{p\} \cup \mathcal{J}_{mand}\} / \{\{j\} \cup \mathcal{J}_{mand} : j \in \mathcal{J}_{mand}\}$$

i.e. in each iteration the algorithm fits a weak learner on the mandatory covariates and one additional (non-mandatory) covariate (hence still being componentwise).

In addition, a penalty matrix  $\mathbf{P} \in \mathbb{R}^{p \times p}$  is considered such that  $P_{ii} > 0$  implies that covariate  $i$  is penalized and  $P_{ii} = 0$  means no penalization. In practice this is usually a diagonal matrix (Harald Binder and Schumacher 2008) and by setting  $P_{ii} = 0, i \in I_{mand}$  and  $P_{ii} > 0, i \notin I_{mand}$ , only optional (non-mandatory) covariates are penalized. The penalty matrix can be allowed to vary with each iteration, which allows for a highly flexible approach, however in implementation a simpler approach is to either select a single penalty to be applied in each iteration step or to have a single penalty matrix (Harold Binder 2013).

At the  $m$ th iteration and the  $k$ th set of indices to consider ( $k = 1, \dots, p$ ), the loss to optimize is the penalized partial-log likelihood given by

$$l_{pen}(\gamma_{mk}) = \sum_{i=1}^n \Delta_i \left[ \eta_{i,m-1} + X_{i,\mathcal{J}_{mk}} \gamma_{mk}^T \right] - \Delta_i \log \left( \sum_{j=1}^n \mathbb{I}(T_j \leq T_i) \exp(\eta_{i,m-1} + X_{i,\mathcal{J}_{mk}} \gamma_{mk}^T) \right) - \lambda \gamma_{mk}^T \mathbf{P}_{mk} \gamma_{mk}$$

where  $\eta_{i,m} = X_i \beta_m$ ,  $\gamma_{mk}$  are the coefficients corresponding to the covariates in  $\mathcal{J}_{mk}$  which is the possible set of candidates for a subset of total candidates  $k = 1, \dots, p$ ,  $\mathbf{P}_{mk}$  is the penalty matrix, and  $\lambda$  is a penalty hyper-parameter to be tuned or selected.<sup>4</sup>

In each iteration, all potential candidate sets (the union of mandatory covariates and one other covariate) are updated by

$$\hat{\gamma}_{mk} = \mathbf{I}_{pen}^{-1}(0)U(0)$$

where  $U(\gamma) = \partial l / \partial \gamma(\gamma)$  and  $\mathbf{I}_{pen}^{-1} = \partial^2 l / \partial \gamma \partial \gamma^T (\gamma + \lambda \mathbf{P}_{mk})$  are the first and second derivatives of the unpenalized partial-log-likelihood. The optimal set is then found as

$$k^* := \underset{k}{\operatorname{argmax}} l_{pen}(\gamma_{mk})$$

and the estimated coefficients are updated with

$$\hat{\beta}_m = \hat{\beta}_{m-1} + \gamma_{mk^*}, \quad k^* \in \mathcal{J}_{mk}$$

The step size,  $\nu$ , is then one, but this could potentially be altered.

The algorithm deviates from (7) as  $l_{pen}$  is directly optimised and not its gradient, additionally model coefficients are iteratively updated instead of a more general model form. The algorithm is implemented in **CoxBoost** (Harold Binder 2013). Experiments suggest that including the ‘correct’ mandatory covariates may increase predictive performance (Harald Binder and Schumacher 2008). CoxBoost is less accessible than other boosting methods as it requires a unique boosting algorithm, as such only one off-shelf implementation appears

<sup>4</sup>On notation, note that  $\mathbf{P}_{ij}$  refers to the penalty matrix in the  $i$ th iteration for the  $j$ th set of indices, whereas  $P_{ij}$  is the  $(i, j)$ th element in the matrix  $\mathbf{P}$ .

to exist and even this implementation has been removed from CRAN as of 2020-11-11. CoxBoost is also less transparent as the underlying algorithm is more complex, though is well-explained by the authors (Harald Binder and Schumacher 2008). There is good indication that CoxBoost is performant (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021). In a non-medical domain, where performance may be the most important metric, then perhaps CoxBoost can be recommended as a powerful model. However, when sensitive predictions are required, CoxBoost may not be recommended. Further papers studying the model and more off-shelf implementations could change this in the future.

#### 14.1.2.2 Ranking Survival Models

The ranking survival models in this section are all unified as they make predictions of the linear predictor,  $\hat{g}(X^*) = X^* \hat{\beta}$ .<sup>5</sup>

**GBM-AFT** `{#mod-gbmaft}` Schmid and Hothorn (2008) (Schmid and Hothorn 2008b) published a GBM for accelerated failure time models in response to PH-boosted models that may not be suitable for non-PH data. Their model fits into the GBM framework by assuming a fully-parametric AFT and simultaneously estimating the linear predictor,  $\hat{g}(X_i) = \hat{\eta}$ , and the scale parameter,  $\hat{\sigma}$ , controlling the amount of noise in the distribution. The (fully-parametric) AFT is defined by

$$\log Y = \eta + \sigma W$$

where  $W$  is a random variable independent of the covariates that follows a given distribution and controls the noise in the model. By assuming a distribution on  $W$ , a distribution is assumed for the full parametric model. The full likelihood,  $\mathcal{L}$ , is given by

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathcal{D}_{train} | \mu, \sigma, W) = \prod_{i=1}^n \left[ \frac{1}{\sigma} f_W \left( \frac{\log(T_i) - \mu}{\sigma} \right) \right]^{\Delta_i} \left[ S_W \left( \frac{\log(T_i) - \mu}{\sigma} \right) \right]^{(1-\Delta_i)} \quad (14.3)$$

where  $f_W, S_W$  is the pdf and survival function of  $W$  for a given distribution. By setting  $\mu := g(X_i)$ ,  $\sigma$  is then rescaled according to known results depending on the distribution (Klein and Moeschberger 2003). The gradient of the negative log-likelihood,  $-l$ , is minimised in the  $m$ th iteration where

$$l(\mathcal{D}_{train} | \hat{g}, \hat{\sigma}, W) = \sum_{i=1}^n \Delta_i \left[ -\log \sigma + \log f_W \left( \frac{\log(T_i) - \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i)}{\hat{\sigma}_{m-1}} \right) \right] + \\ (1 - \Delta_i) \left[ \log S_W \left( \frac{\log(T_i) - \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i)}{\hat{\sigma}_{m-1}} \right) \right]$$

where  $\hat{g}_{m-1}, \hat{\sigma}_{m-1}$  are the location-scale parameters estimated in the previous iteration. Note this key difference to other GBM methods in which two estimates are made in each iteration step. In order to allow for this, (7) is run as normal but in addition, after updating  $\hat{g}_m$ , one then updates  $\hat{\sigma}_m$  as

$$\hat{\sigma}_m := \underset{\sigma}{\operatorname{argmin}} -l(\mathcal{D}_{train} | g_m, \sigma, W)$$

$\sigma_0$  is initialized at the start of the algorithm with  $\sigma_0 = 1$  suggested (Schmid and Hothorn 2008b).

<sup>5</sup>This is commonly referred to as a 'linear predictor' as it directly relates to the boosted linear model (e.g. Cox PH), however it is more accurately a 'prognostic index' as the final prediction is not the true linear predictor.

This algorithm provides a ranking prediction without enforcing an often-unrealistic PH assumption on the data. This model is implemented in **mboost** and **xgboost**. Experiments indicate that this may outperform the Cox PH (Schmid and Hothorn 2008b). Moreover the model has the same transparency and accessibility as the GBM-COX.

**GBM-GEH** `{#mod-gbmgeh}` The concordance index is likely the most popular measure of discrimination, this in part due to the fact that it makes little-to-no assumptions about the data (Chapter 6). A less common measure is the Gehan loss, motivated by the semi-parametric AFT. Johnson and Long proposed the GBM with Gehan loss, here termed GBM-GEH, to optimise separation within an AFT framework (Johnson and Long 2011).

The semi-parametric AFT is defined by the linear model,

$$\log Y = \eta + \epsilon$$

for some error term,  $\epsilon$ .

The D-dimensional Gehan loss to minimise is given by,

$$G_D(\mathcal{D}_{train}, \hat{g}) = -\frac{1}{n^2} \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n \Delta_i(\hat{e}_i - \hat{e}_j) \mathbb{I}(\hat{e}_i \leq \hat{e}_j)$$

where  $\hat{e}_i = \log T_i - \hat{g}(X_i)$ . The negative gradient of the loss is,

$$r_{im} := \frac{\sum_{j=1}^n \Delta_j \mathbb{I}(\hat{e}_{m-1,i} \geq \hat{e}_{m-1,j}) - \Delta_i \mathbb{I}(\hat{e}_{m-1,i} \leq \hat{e}_{m-1,j})}{n}$$

where  $\hat{e}_{m-1,i} = \log T_i - \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i)$ .

- (6) then follows naturally substituting the loss and gradient above. The algorithm is implemented in **mboost**. Simulation studies on the performance of the model are inconclusive (Johnson and Long 2011) however the results in (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021) indicate strong predictive performance.

**GBM-BUJAR** `{#mod-gbmbujar}` GBM-BUJAR is another boosted semi-parametric AFT. However the algorithm introduced by Wang and Wang (2010) (Z. Wang and Wang 2010) uses Buckley-James imputation and minimisation. This algorithm is almost identical to a regression GBM (i.e. using squared loss or similar for  $L$ ), except with one additional step to iteratively impute censored survival times. Assuming a semi-parametric AFT model, the GBM-BUJAR algorithm iteratively updates imputed outcomes with the Buckley-James estimator (Buckley and James 1979),

$$T_{m,i}^* := \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i) + e_{m-1,i} \Delta_i + (1 - \Delta_i) \left[ \hat{S}_{KM}(e_{m-1,i})^{-1} \sum_{e_{m-1,j} > e_{m-1,i}} e_{m-1,j} \Delta_j \hat{p}_{KM}(e_{m-1,j}) \right]$$

where  $\hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i) = \hat{\eta}_{m-1}$ , and  $\hat{S}_{KM}, \hat{p}_{KM}$  are Kaplan-Meier estimates of the survival and probability mass functions respectively fit on some training data, and  $e_{m-1,i} := \log(T_i) - \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i)$ . Once  $T_{m,i}^*$  has been updated, (7) continues from with least squares as with any regression model.

GBM-BUJAR is implemented in **bujar** (Z. Wang 2019) though without a separated fit/predict interface, its accessibility is therefore limited. There is no evidence of wide usage of this algorithm nor simulation studies demonstrating its predictive ability. Finally,



there are many known problems with semi-parametric AFT models and the Buckley-James procedure (Wei 1992), hence GBM-BUJAR is also not transparent.

**GBM-UNO** `{#mod-gbmuno}` Instead of optimising models based on a given model form, Chen *et al.* (Y. Chen et al. 2013) studied direct optimisation of discrimination by Harrell’s C whereas Mayr and Schmid (Mayr and Schmid 2014) focused instead on Uno’s C. Only an implementation of the Uno’s C method could be found, this is therefore discussed here and termed ‘GBM-UNO’.

The GBM-UNO attempts to predict  $\hat{g}(X^*) := \hat{\eta}$  by optimising Uno’s C (Section 6.0.1),

$$C_U(\hat{g}, \mathcal{D}_{train}) = \frac{\sum_{i \neq j} \Delta_i \{\hat{G}_{KM}(T_i)\}^{-2} \mathbb{I}(T_i < T_j) \mathbb{I}(\hat{g}(X_i) > \hat{g}(X_j))}{\sum_{i \neq j} \Delta_i \{\hat{G}_{KM}(T_i)\}^{-2} \mathbb{I}(T_i < T_j)}$$

The GBM algorithm requires that the chosen loss, here  $C_U$ , be differentiable with respect to  $\hat{g}(X)$ , which is not the case here due to the indicator term,  $\mathbb{I}(\hat{g}(X_i) > \hat{g}(X_j))$ . Therefore a smoothed version is instead considered where the indicator is approximated by the sigmoid function (Ma and Huang 2006),

$$K(u|\sigma) = (1 + \exp(-u/\sigma))^{-1}$$

where  $\sigma$  is a hyper-parameter controlling the smoothness of the approximation. The measure to optimise is then,

$$C_{USmooth}(\mathcal{D}_{train}|\sigma) = \sum_{i \neq j} \frac{k_{ij}}{1 + \exp[(\hat{g}(X_j) - \hat{g}(X_i))/\sigma]} \quad (14.4)$$

with

$$k_{ij} = \frac{\Delta_i (\hat{G}_{KM}(T_i))^{-2} \mathbb{I}(T_i < T_j)}{\sum_{i \neq j}^n \Delta_i (\hat{G}_{KM}(T_i))^{-2} \mathbb{I}(T_i < T_j)}$$

The negative gradient at iteration  $m$  for observation  $i$  can then be found,

$$r_{im} := - \sum_{j=1}^n k_{ij} \frac{-\exp(\frac{\hat{g}_{m-1}(X_j) - \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i)}{\sigma})}{\sigma(1 + \exp(\frac{\hat{g}_{m-1}(X_j) - \hat{g}_{m-1}(X_i)}{\sigma}))} \quad (14.5)$$

- (7) can then be followed exactly by substituting this loss and gradient; this is implemented in **mboost**. One disadvantage of GBM-UNO is that C-index boosting is more insensitive to overfitting than other methods (Mayr, Hofner, and Schmid 2016), therefore stability selection (Meinshausen and Bühlmann 2010) can be considered for variable selection; this is possible with **mboost**. Despite directly optimising discrimination, simulation studies do not indicate that this model has better separation than other boosted or lasso models (Mayr and Schmid 2014). GBM-UNO has the same accessibility, transparency, and performance (R. E. B. Sonabend 2021) as previous boosting models.

### 14.1.3 Conclusions

Componentwise gradient boosting machines are a highly flexible and powerful machine learning tool. They have proven particularly useful in survival analysis as minimal adjustments are required to make use of off-shelf software. The flexibility of the algorithm allows all the models above to be implemented in very few R (and other programming languages) packages.

Boosting is a method that often relies on intensive computing power and therefore dedicated packages, such as **xgboost** (T. Chen et al. 2020), exist to push CPU/GPUs to their limits in order to optimise predictive performance. This can be viewed as a strong advantage though one should be careful not to focus too much on predictive performance to the detriment of accessibility and transparency.

Boosting, especially with tree learners, is viewed as a black-box model that is increasingly difficult to interpret as the number of iterations increase. However, there are several methods for increasing interpretability, such as variable importance and SHAPs (Lundberg and Lee 2017). There is also evidence that boosting models can outperform the Cox PH (Schmid and Hothorn 2008b) (not something all ML models can claim).

## Part IV

# Reduction Techniques



TODO (150-200 WORDS)

! Page in progress!

**This page is a work in progress and will change significantly over time.**

In this chapter, composition and reduction are formally introduced, defined and demonstrated within survival analysis. Neither of these are novel concepts in general or in survival, with several applications already seen earlier when reviewing models (particularly in neural networks), however a lack of formalisation has led to much repeated work and at times questionable applications (?@sec-surv-ml-models-nn). The primary purpose of this chapter is to formalise composition and reduction for survival and to unify references and strategies for future use. These strategies are introduced in the context of minimal ‘workflows’ and graphical ‘pipelines’ in order to maximise their generalisability. The pipelines discussed in this chapter are implemented in [mlr3proba](#).

A *workflow* is a generic term given to a series of sequential operations. For example a standard ML workflow is fit/predict/evaluate, which means a model is fit, predictions are made, and these are evaluated. In this book, a *pipeline* is the name given to a concrete workflow. Section 15.1 demonstrates how pipelines are represented in this book.

Composition (Section 15.2) is a general process in which an object is built (or composed) from other objects and parameters. Reduction (Section 15.3) is a closely related concept that utilises composition in order to transform one problem into another. Concrete strategies for composition and reduction are detailed in sections Section 15.4 and Section 15.5.

## Notation and Terminology

The notation introduced in Chapter 4 is recapped for use in this chapter: the generative survival template for the survival setting is given by  $(X, T, \Delta, Y, C)$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{X} \times \mathcal{T} \times \{0, 1\} \times \mathcal{T} \times \mathcal{T}$  where  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $\mathcal{T} \subseteq \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$ , where  $C, Y$  are unobservable,  $T := \min\{Y, C\}$ , and  $\Delta = \mathbb{I}(Y = T)$ . Random survival data is given by  $(X_i, T_i, \Delta_i, Y_i, C_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, T, \Delta, Y, C)$ . Usually data will instead be presented as a training dataset,  $\mathcal{D}_{train} = \{(X_1, T_1, \Delta_1), \dots, (X_n, T_n, \Delta_n)\}$  where  $(X_i, T_i, \Delta_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, T, \Delta)$ , and some test data  $\mathcal{D}_{test} = (X^*, T^*, \Delta^*) \sim (X, T, \Delta)$ .

For regression models the generative template is given by  $(X, Y)$  t.v.i.  $\mathcal{X} \subseteq \mathbb{R}^p$  and  $Y \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ . As with the survival setting, a regression training set is given by  $\{(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)\}$  where  $(X_i, Y_i) \stackrel{i.i.d.}{\sim} (X, Y)$  and some test data  $(X^*, Y^*) \sim (X, Y)$ .

## 15.1 Representing Pipelines

Before introducing concrete composition and reduction algorithms, this section briefly demonstrates how these pipelines will be represented in this book.

Pipelines are represented by graphs designed in the following way: all are drawn with operations progressing sequentially from left to right; graphs are comprised of nodes (or ‘vertices’) and arrows (or ‘directed edges’); a rounded rectangular node represents a process such as a function or model fitting/predicting; a (regular) rectangular node represents objects such as data or hyper-parameters. Output from rounded nodes are sometimes explicitly drawn but when omitted the output from the node is the input to the next.

These features are demonstrated in **?@fig-car-example**. Say  $y = 2$  and  $a = 2$ , then: data is provided ( $y = 2$ ) and passed to the shift function ( $f(x) = x + 2$ ), the output of this function ( $y = 4$ ) is passed directly to the next ( $h(x|a) = x^a$ ), this function requires a parameter which is also input ( $a = 2$ ), finally the resulting output is returned ( $y^* = 16$ ). Programmatically,  $a = 2$  would be a hyper-parameter that is stored and passed to the required function when the function is called.

This pipeline is represented as a pseudo-algorithm in (**alg-car-ex?**), though of course is overly complicated and in practice one would just code  $(y + 2)^a$ .

---

**Algorithm 6** Example pipeline.

**\*\*Input\*\*** Data,  $y \in \mathbb{R}$ . Parameter,  $a \in \mathbb{R}$ .

**\*\*Output\*\*** Transformed data,  $x \in \mathbb{R}$ .

---

```

 $x \leftarrow y$ 
 $x \leftarrow x + 2$ 
 $x \leftarrow x^a$  return  $x$ 

```

---

## 15.2 Introduction to Composition

This section introduces composition, defines a taxonomy for describing compositors (Section 15.2.1), and provides some motivating examples of composition in survival analysis (Section 15.2.2).

In the simplest definition, a model (be it mathematical, computational, machine learning, etc.) is called a *composite model* if it is built of two or more constituent parts. This can be simplest defined in terms of objects. Just as objects in the real-world can be combined in some way, so can mathematical objects. The exact ‘combining’ process (or ‘compositor’) depends on the specific composition, so too do the inputs and outputs. By example, a wooden table can be thought of as a composite object (Figure 15.1). The inputs are wood and nails, the combining process is hammering (assuming the wood is pre-chopped), and the output is a surface for eating. In mathematics, this process is mirrored. Take the example of a shifted linear regression model. This is defined by a linear regression model,  $f(x) = \beta_0 + x\beta_1$ , a shifting parameter,  $\alpha$ , and a compositor  $g(x|\alpha) = f(x) + \alpha$ . Mathematically this example is overly trivial as this could be directly modelled with  $f(x) = \alpha + \beta_0 + x\beta_1$ , but algorithmically there is a difference. The composite model  $g$ , is defined by first fitting the linear regression

model,  $f$ , and then applying a shift,  $\alpha$ ; as opposed to fitting a directly shifted model.

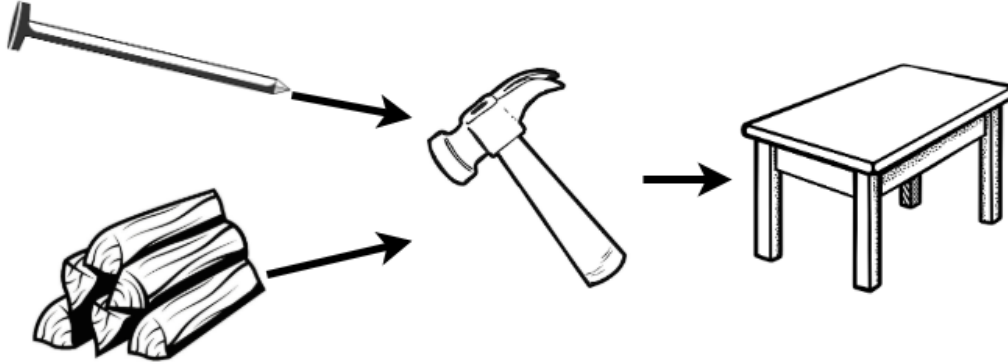


Figure 15.1: Visualising composition in the real-world. A table is a composite object built from nails and wood, which are combined with a hammer ‘compositor’. Figure not to scale.

### Why Composition?

Tables tend to be better surfaces for eating your dinner than bundles of wood. Or in modelling terms, it is well-known that ensemble methods (e.g. random forests) will generally outperform their components (e.g. decision trees). All ensemble methods are composite models and this demonstrates one of the key use-cases of composition: improved predictive performance. The second key use-case is reduction, which is fully discussed in Section 15.3. Section 15.2.2 motivates composition in survival analysis by demonstrating how it is already prevalent but requires formalisation to make compositions more transparent and accessible.

### Composite Model vs. Sub-models

A bundle of wood and nails is not a table and 1,000 decision trees are not a random forest, both require a compositor. The compositor in a composite model combines the components into a single model. Considering a composite model as a single model enables the hyper-parameters of the compositor and the component model(s) to be efficiently tuned whilst being evaluated as a single model. This further allows the composite to be compared to other models, including its own components, which is required to justify complexity instead of parsimony in model building (Section 5.2).

#### 15.2.1 Taxonomy of Compositors

Just as there are an infinite number of ways to make a table, composition can come in infinite forms. However there are relatively few categories that these can be grouped into. Two primary taxonomies are identified here. The first is the ‘composition type’ and relates to the number of objects composed:

[i)] i. Single-Object Composition (SOC) – This form of composition either makes use of parameters or a transformation to alter a single object. The shifted linear regression model above is one example of this, another is given in Section 15.4.3. i. Multi-Object Composition

(MOC) – In contrast, this form of composition combines multiple objects into a single one. Both examples in Section 15.2.2 are multi-object compositions.

The second grouping is the ‘composition level’ and determines at what ‘level’ the composition takes place:

[i)] i. Prediction Composition – This applies at the level of predictions; the component models could be forgotten at this point. Predictions may be combined from multiple models (MOC) or transformed from a single model (SOC). Both examples in Section 15.2.2 are prediction compositions. i. Task Composition – This occurs when one task (e.g. regression) is transformed to one or more others (e.g. classification), therefore always SOC. This is seen mainly in the context of reduction (Section 15.3). i. Model Composition – This is commonly seen in the context of wrappers (Section 15.5.1.4), in which one model is contained within another. i. Data Composition – This is transformation of training/testing data types, which occurs at the first stage of every pipeline.

## 15.2.2 Motivation for Composition

Two examples are provided below to demonstrate common uses of composition in survival analysis and to motivate the compositions introduced in Section 15.4.

### Example 1: Cox Proportional Hazards

Common implementations of well-known models can themselves be viewed as composite models, the Cox PH is the most prominent example in survival analysis. Recall the model defined by

$$h(\tau|X_i) = h_0(\tau) \exp(\beta X_i)$$

where  $h_0$  is the baseline hazard and  $\beta$  are the model coefficients.

This can be seen as a composite model as Cox defines the model in two stages (Cox 1972): first fitting the  $\beta$ -coefficients using the partial likelihood and then by suggesting an estimate for the baseline distribution. This first stage produces a linear predictor return type (Section 4.3) and the second stage returns a survival distribution prediction. Therefore the Cox model for linear predictions is a single (non-composite) model, however when used to make distribution predictions then it is a composite. Cox implicitly describes the model as a composite by writing “alternative simpler procedures would be worth having” (Cox 1972), which implies a decision in fitting (a key feature of composition). This composition is formalised in Section 15.4.1 as a general pipeline (C1). The Cox model utilises the (C1) pipeline with a PH form and Kaplan-Meier baseline.

### Example 2: Random Survival Forests

Fully discussed in Section 13.1, random survival forests are composed from many individual decision trees via a prediction composition algorithm ((**alg-rsf-pred?**)). In general, random forests perform better than their component decision trees, which tends to be true of all ensemble methods. Aggregation of predictions in survival analysis requires slightly more care than other fields due to the multiple prediction types, however this is still possible and is formalised in Section 15.4.4.



### 15.3 Introduction to Reduction

This section introduces reduction, motivates its use in survival analysis (Section 15.3.1), details an abstract reduction pipeline and defines the difference between a complete/incomplete reduction (Section 15.3.2), and outlines some common mistakes that have been observed in the literature when applying reduction (Section 15.3.3).

Reduction is a concept found across disciplines with varying definitions. This report uses the Langford definition: reduction is “a complex problem decomposed into simpler subproblems so that a solution to the subproblems gives a solution to the complex problem” (Langford et al. 2016). Generalisation (or induction) is a common real-world use of reduction, for example sampling a subset of a population in order to estimate population-level results. The true answer (population-level values) may not always be found in this way but very good approximations can be made with simpler sub-problems (sub-sampling).

Reductions are workflows that utilise composition. By including hyper-parameters, even complex reduction strategies can remain relatively flexible. To illustrate reduction by example, recall the table-building example (Section 15.2) in which the task of interest is to acquire a table. The most direct but complex solution is to fell a tree and directly saw it into a table (Figure 15.2, top), clearly this is not a sensible process. Instead the problem can be reduced into simpler sub-problems: saw the tree into bundles of wood, acquire nails, and then use the ‘hammer compositor’ (Figure 15.1) to create a table (Figure 15.2, bottom).

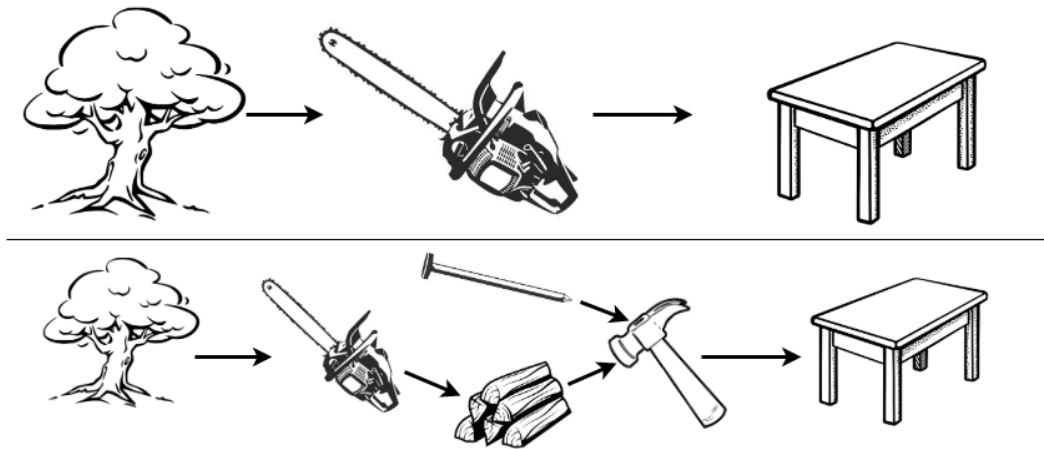


Figure 15.2: Visualising reduction in the real-world. The complex process (top) of directly sawing a tree into a table is inefficient and unnecessarily complex. The reduction (bottom) that involves first creating bundles of wood is simpler, more efficient, and yields the same result, though technically requiring more steps.

In a modelling example, predicting a survival distribution with the Cox model can be viewed as a reduction in which two sub-problems are solved and composed:

- i. predict continuous ranking;
- ii. estimate baseline hazard; and

- iii. compose with (C1) (Section 15.4.1).

This is visualised as a reduction strategy in **?@fig-car-cargraph**. The entire process from defining the original problem, to combining the simpler sub-solutions (in green), is the reduction (in red).

### 15.3.1 Reduction Motivation

Formalisation of reduction positively impacts upon accessibility, transparency, and predictive performance. Improvements to predictive performance have already been demonstrated when comparing random forests to decision trees. In addition, a reduction with multiple stages and many hyper-parameters allows for fine tuning for improved transparency and model performance (usual overfitting caveat applies, as does the trade-off described in **?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**).

The survey of ANNs (**?@sec-surv-ml-models-nn**) demonstrated how reduction is currently utilised without transparency. Many of these ANNs are implicitly reductions to probabilistic classification (Section 15.5.1.6) however none include details about how the reduction is performed. Furthermore in implementation, none provide interface points to the reduction hyper-parameters. Formalisation encourages consistent terminology, methodology and transparent implementation, which can only improve model performance by exposing further hyper-parameters.

Accessibility is improved by formalising specific reduction workflows that previously demanded expert knowledge in deriving, building, and running these pipelines. All regression reductions in this chapter, are implemented in `\mlr3proba` (R. Sonabend et al. 2021) and can be utilised with any possible survival model.

Finally there is an economic and efficiency advantage to reduction. A reduction model is relatively ‘cheap’ to explore as they utilise pre-established models and components to solve a new problem. Therefore if a certain degree of predictive ability can be demonstrated from reduction models, it may not be worth the expense of pursuing more novel ideas and hence reduction can help direct future research.

### 15.3.2 Task, Loss, and Data Reduction

Reduction can be categorised into task, loss, and data reduction, often these must be used in conjunction with each other. The direction of the reductions may be one- or two-way; this is visualised in **?@fig-car-reduxdiag**. This diagram should not be viewed as a strict fit/predict/evaluation workflow but instead as a guidance for which tasks,  $T$ , data,  $D$ , models,  $M$ , and losses,  $L$ , are required for each other. The subscript  $O$  refers to the original object ‘level’ before reduction, whereas the subscript  $R$  is in reference to the reduced object.

The individual task, model, and data compositions in the diagram are listed below, the reduction from survival to classification (Section 15.5.1) is utilised as a running example to help exposition.

- $T_O \rightarrow T_R$ : By definition of a machine learning reduction, task reduction will always be one way. A more complex task,  $T_O$ , is reduced to a simpler one,  $T_R$ , for solving.  $T_R$  could also be multiple simpler tasks. For example, solving a survival task,  $T_O$ , by classification,  $T_R$  (Section 15.5.1).
- $T_R \rightarrow M_R$ : All machine learning tasks have models that are designed to solve them. For example logistic regression,  $M_R$ , for classification tasks,  $T_R$ .

- $M_R \rightarrow M_O$ : The simpler models,  $M_R$ , are used for the express purpose to solve the original task,  $T_O$ , via solving the simpler ones. To solve  $T_O$ , a compositor must be applied, which may transform one (SOC) or multiple models (MOC) at a model- or prediction-level, thus creating  $M_O$ . For example predicting survival probabilities with logistic regression,  $M_R$ , at times  $1, \dots, \tau^*$  for some  $\tau^* \in \mathbb{N}_{>0}$  (Section 15.5.1.4).
- $M_O \rightarrow T_O$ : The original task should be solvable by the composite model. For example predicting a discrete survival distribution by concatenating probabilistic predictions at the times  $1, \dots, \tau^*$  (Section 15.5.1.6).
- $D_O \rightarrow D_R$ : Just as the tasks and models are reduced, the data required to fit these must likewise be reduced. Similarly to task reduction, data reduction can usually only take place in one direction, to see why this is the case take an example of data reduction by summaries. If presented with 10 data-points  $\{1, 1, 1, 5, 7, 3, 5, 4, 3, 3\}$  then these could be reduced to a single point by calculating the sample mean, 3.3. Clearly given only the number 3.3 there is no strategy to recover the original data. There are very few (if any) data reduction strategies that allow recovery of the original data. Continuing the running example, survival data,  $D_O$ , can be binned (Section 15.5.1.1) to classification data,  $D_R$ .

There is no arrow between  $D_O$  and  $M_O$  as the composite model is never fit directly, only via composition from  $M_R \rightarrow M_O$ . However, the original data,  $D_O$ , is required when evaluating the composite model against the respective loss,  $L_O$ .<sup>1</sup> Reduction should be directly comparable to non-reduction models, hence this diagram does not include loss reduction and instead insists that all models are compared against the same loss  $L_O$ .

A reduction is said to be *complete* if there is a full pipeline from  $T_O \rightarrow M_O$  and the original task is solved, otherwise it is *incomplete*. The simplest complete reduction is comprised of the pipeline  $T_O \rightarrow T_R \rightarrow M_R \rightarrow M_O$ . Usually this is not sufficient on its own as the reduced models are fit on the reduced data,  $D_R \rightarrow M_R$ .

A complete reduction can be specified by detailing:

- i. the original task and the sub-task(s) to be solved,  $T_O \rightarrow T_R$ ;
- ii. the original dataset and the transformation to the reduced one,  $D_O \rightarrow D_R$  (if required); and
- iii. the composition from the simpler model to the complex one,  $M_R \rightarrow M_O$ .

### 15.3.3 Common Mistakes in Implementation of Reduction

In surveying models and measures, several common mistakes in the implementation of reduction and composition were found to be particularly prevalent and problematic throughout the literature. It is assumed that these are indeed mistakes (not deliberate) and result from a lack of prior formalisation. These mistakes were even identified 20 years ago (Schwarzer, Vach, and Schumacher 2000) but are provided in more detail in order to highlight their current prevalence and why they cannot be ignored.

RM1. Incomplete reduction. This occurs when a reduction workflow is presented as if it solves the original task but fails to do so and only the reduction strategy is solved. A common example is claiming to solve the survival task by using binary classification, e.g. erroneously claiming that a model predicts survival probabilities (which implies distribution) when it actually predicts a five year probability of death ((**box-task-classif?**)). This is a

<sup>1</sup>A complete diagram would indicate that  $D_O$  is split into training data, which is subsequently reduced, and test data, which is passed to  $L_O$ . All reductions in this section can be applied to any data splitting process.

mistake as it misleads readers into believing that the model solves a survival task ((**box-task-surv?**)) when it does not. This is usually a semantic not mathematical error and results from misuse of terminology. It is important to be clear about model predict types (Section 4.3) and general terms such as ‘survival predictions’ should be avoided unless they refer to one of the three prediction tasks. RM2. Inappropriate comparisons. This is a direct consequence of (RM1) and the two are often seen together. (RM2) occurs when an incomplete reduction is directly compared to a survival model (or complete reduction model) using a measure appropriate for the reduction. This may lead to a reduction model appearing erroneously superior. For example, comparing a logistic regression to a random survival forest (RSF) (Section 13.1) for predicting survival probabilities at a single time using the accuracy measure is an unfair comparison as the RSF is optimised for distribution predictions. This would be non-problematic if a suitable composition is clearly utilised. For example a regression SSVM predicting survival time cannot be directly compared to a Cox PH. However the SSVM can be compared to a CPH composed with the probabilistic to deterministic compositor (C3), then conclusions can be drawn about comparison to the composite survival time Cox model (and not simply a Cox PH). RM3. Naïve censoring deletion. This common mistake occurs when trying to reduce survival to regression or classification by simply deleting all censored observations, even if censoring is informative. This is a mistake as it creates bias in the dataset, which can be substantial if the proportion of censoring is high and informative. More robust deletion methods are described in ?@sec-redux-regr. RM4. Oversampling uncensored observations. This is often seen when trying to reduce survival to regression or classification, and often alongside (RM3). Oversampling is the process of replicating observations to artificially inflate the sample size of the data. Whilst this process does not create any new information, it can help a model detect important features in the data. However, by only oversampling uncensored observations, this creates a source of bias in the data and ignores the potentially informative information provided by the proportion of censoring.

---

## 15.4 Composition Strategies for Survival Analysis

Though composition is common practice in survival analysis, with the Cox model being a prominent example, a lack of formalisation means a lack of consensus in simple operations. For example, it is often asked in survival analysis how a model predicting a survival distribution can be used to return a survival time prediction. A common strategy is to define the survival time prediction as the median of the predicted survival curve however there is no clear reason why this should be more sensible than returning the distribution mean, mode, or some random quantile. Formalisation allow these choices to be analytically compared both theoretically and practically as hyper-parameters in a workflow. Four prediction compositions are discussed in this section ((**tab-car-taxredcar?**)), three are utilised to convert prediction types between one another, the fourth is for aggregating multiple predictions. One data composition is discussed for converting survival to regression data. Each is first graphically represented and then the components are discussed in detail. As with losses in the previous chapter, compositions are discussed at an individual observation level but extend trivially to multiple observations.

Table 15.1: Compositions formalised in Section 15.4.

| ID <sup>1</sup> | Composition                      | Type <sup>2</sup> | Level <sup>3</sup> |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| C1)             | Linear predictor to distribution | MOC               | Prediction         |
| C2)             | Survival time to distribution    | MOC               | Prediction         |
| C3)             | Distribution to survival time    | SOC               | Prediction         |
| C4)             | Survival model averaging         | MOC               | Prediction         |
| C5)             | Survival to regression           | SOC               | Data               |

1. ID for reference throughout this book. 2. Composition type. Multi-object composition (MOC) or single-object composition (SOC). 3. Composition level.

### 15.4.1 C1) Linear Predictor $\rightarrow$ Distribution

This is a prediction-level MOC that composes a survival distribution from a predicted linear predictor and estimated baseline survival distribution. The composition (**?@fig-car-comp-distr**) requires:

- $\hat{\eta}$ : Predicted linear predictor.  $\hat{\eta}$  can be tuned by including this composition multiple times in a benchmark experiment with different models predicting  $\hat{\eta}$ . In theory any continuous ranking could be utilised instead of a linear predictor though results may be less sensible (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**).
- $\hat{S}_0$ : Estimated baseline survival function. This is usually estimated by the Kaplan-Meier estimator fit on training data,  $\hat{S}_{KM}$ . However any model that can predict a survival distribution can estimate the baseline distribution (caveat: see **?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**) by taking a uniform mixture of the predicted individual distributions: say  $\xi_1, \dots, \xi_m$  are  $m$  predicted distributions, then  $\hat{S}_0(\tau) = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m \xi_i.S(\tau)$ . The mixture is required as the baseline must be the same for all observations. Alternatively, parametric distributions can be assumed for the baseline, e.g.  $\xi = \text{Exp}(2)$  and  $\xi.S(t) = \exp(-2t)$ . As with  $\hat{\eta}$ , this parameter is also tunable.
- $M$ : Chosen model form, which theoretically can be any non-increasing right-continuous function but is usually one of:
- Proportional Hazards (PH):  $S_{PH}(\tau|\eta, S_0) = S_0(\tau)^{\exp(\eta)}$
- Accelerated Failure Time (AFT):  $S_{AFT}(\tau|\eta, S_0) = S_0(\frac{\tau}{\exp(\eta)})$
- Proportional Odds (PO):  $S_{PO}(\tau|\eta, S_0) = \frac{S_0(\tau)}{\exp(-\eta) + (1 - \exp(-\eta))S_0(\tau)}$

Models that predict linear predictors will make assumptions about the model form and therefore dictate sensible choices of  $M$ , for example the Cox model assumes a PH form. This does not mean other choices of  $M$  cannot be specified but that interpretation may be more difficult (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**). The model form can be treated as a hyperparameter to tune. \*  $C$ : Compositor returning the composed distribution,  $\zeta := C(M, \hat{\eta}, \hat{S}_0)$  where  $\zeta$  has survival function  $\zeta.S(\tau) = M(\tau|\hat{\eta}, \hat{S}_0)$ .

Pseudo-code for training (**(alg-car-comp-distr-fit?)**) and predicting (**(alg-car-comp-distr-pred?)**) this composition as a model ‘wrapper’ with sensible parameter choices (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**) is provided in appendix (**app-car?**).

### 15.4.2 C2) Survival Time $\rightarrow$ Distribution

This is a prediction-level MOC that composes a distribution from a predicted survival time and assumed location-scale distribution. The composition (**?@fig-car-comp-response**) requires:

- $\hat{T}$ : A predicted survival time. As with the previous composition, this is tunable. In theory any continuous ranking could replace  $\hat{T}$ , though the resulting distribution may not be sensible (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**).
- $\xi$ : A specified location-scale distribution,  $\xi(\mu, \sigma)$ , e.g. Normal distribution.
- $\hat{\sigma}$ : Estimated scale parameter for the distribution. This can be treated as a hyper-parameter or predicted by another model.
- $C$ : Compositor returning the composed distribution  $\zeta := C(\xi, \hat{T}, \hat{\sigma}) = \xi(\hat{T}, \hat{\sigma})$ .

Pseudo-code for training (**(alg-car-comp-response-fit?)**) and predicting (**(alg-car-comp-response-pred?)**) this composition as a model ‘wrapper’ with sensible parameter choices (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**) is provided in appendix (**app-car?**).

### 15.4.3 C3) Distribution $\rightarrow$ Survival Time Composition

This is a prediction-level SOC that composes a survival time from a predicted distribution. Any paper that evaluates a distribution on concordance is implicitly using this composition in some manner. Not acknowledging the composition leads to unfair model comparison (Section 15.3.3). The composition (**?@fig-car-comp-crank**) requires:

- $\zeta$ : A predicted survival distribution, which again is ‘tunable’.
- $\phi$ : A distribution summary method. Common examples include the mean, median and mode. Other alternatives include distribution quantiles,  $\zeta.F^{-1}(\alpha)$ ,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ ;  $\alpha$  could be tuned as a hyper-parameter.
- $C$ : Compositor returning composed survival time predictions,  $\hat{T} := C(\phi, \zeta) = \phi(\zeta)$ .

Pseudo-code for training (**(alg-car-comp-crank-fit?)**) and predicting (**(alg-car-comp-crank-pred?)**) this composition as a model ‘wrapper’ with sensible parameter choices (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**) is provided in appendix (**app-car?**).

### 15.4.4 C4) Survival Model Averaging

Ensembling is likely the most common composition in machine learning. In survival it is complicated slightly as multiple prediction types means one of two possible compositions is utilised to average predictions. The (**?@fig-car-comp-avg**) composition requires:

- $\rho = \rho_1, \dots, \rho_B$ :  $B$  predictions (not necessarily from the same model) of the same type: ranking, survival time or distribution; again ‘tunable’.
- $w = w_1, \dots, w_B$ : Weights that sum to one.
- $C$ : Compositor returning combined predictions,  $\hat{\rho} := C(\rho, w)$  where  $C(\rho, w) = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{i=1}^B w_i \rho_i$ , if  $\rho$  are ranking of survival time predictions; or  $C(\rho, w) = \zeta$  where  $\zeta$  is the distribution defined by the survival function  $\zeta.S(\tau) = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{i=1}^B w_i \rho_i.S(\tau)$ , if  $\rho$  are distribution predictions.

Pseudo-code for training (**(alg-car-comp-avg-fit?)**) and predicting (**(alg-car-comp-avg-pred?)**) this composition as a model ‘wrapper’ with sensible parameter choices (**?@sec-car-pipelines-trade**) is provided in appendix (**app-car?**).

## 15.5 Novel Survival Reductions

This section collects the various strategies and settings discussed previously into complete reduction workflows. (**tab-car-reduces?**) lists the reductions discussed in this section with IDs for future reference. All strategies are described by visualising a graphical pipeline and then listing the composition steps required in fitting and predicting.

This section only includes novel reduction strategies and does not provide a survey of pre-existing strategies. This limitation is primarily due to time (and page) constraints as every method has very distinct workflows that require complex exposition. Well-established strategies are briefly mentioned below and future research is planned to survey and compare all strategies with respect to empirical performance (i.e. in benchmark experiments).

Two prominent reductions are ‘landmarking’ (Van Houwelingen 2007) and piecewise exponential models (M. Friedman 1982). Both are reductions for time-varying covariates and hence outside the scope of this book. Relevant to this book scope is a large class of strategies that utilise ‘discrete time survival analysis’ (Tutz and Schmid 2016); these strategies include reductions (R7) and (R8). Methodology for discrete time survival analysis has been seen in the literature for the past three decades (Liestol, Andersen, and Andersen 1994). The primary reduction strategy for discrete time survival analysis is implemented in the R package **discSurv** (Welchowski and Schmid 2019); this is very similar to (R7) except that it enforces stricter constraints in the composition procedures and forces a ‘discrete-hazard’ instead of ‘discrete-survival’ representation (Section 15.5.1.2).

### 15.5.1 R7-R8) Survival $\rightarrow$ Probabilistic Classification

Two separate reductions are presented in **?@fig-car-R7R8** however as both are reductions to probabilistic classification and are only different in the very last step, both are presented in this section. Steps and compositions of the reduction (**?@fig-car-R7R8**):

**Fit** F1) A survival dataset,  $\mathcal{D}_{train}$ , is binned,  $B$ , with a continuous to discrete data composition (Section 15.5.1.1). F2) A multi-label classification model, with adaptations for censoring,  $g_L(D_B|\theta)$ , is fit on the transformed dataset,  $D_B$ . Optionally,  $g_L$  could be further reduced to binary,  $g_B$ , or multi-class classification,  $g_c$ , (Section 15.5.1.4). **Predict** P1) Testing survival data,  $\mathcal{D}_{test}$ , is passed to the trained classification model,  $\hat{g}$ , to predict pseudo-survival probabilities  $\tilde{S}$  (or optionally hazards (Section 15.5.1.2)). P2a) Predictions can be composed,  $T_1$ , into a survival distribution prediction,  $\zeta = \zeta_1, \dots, \zeta_m$  (Section 15.5.1.6); or, P2b) Predictions can be composed,  $T_2$ , to survival time predictions,  $\hat{T} = \hat{T}_1, \dots, \hat{T}_m$  (Section 15.5.1.7).

Further details for binning, multi-label classification, and transformation of pseudo-survival probabilities are now provided.

#### 15.5.1.1 Composition: Binning Survival Times

An essential part of the reduction is the transformation from a survival dataset to a classification dataset, which requires two separate compositions. The first (discussed here) is to discretise the survival times ( $B(\mathcal{D}_{train}|w)$  in **?@fig-car-R7R8**) and the second is to merge the survival time and censoring indicator into a single outcome (Section 15.5.1.2).

Discretising survival times is achieved by the common ‘binning’ composition, in which a con-



tinuous outcome is discretised into ‘bins’ according to specified thresholds. These thresholds are usually determined by specifying the width of the bins as a hyper-parameter  $w$ .<sup>2</sup> This is a common transformation and therefore further discussion is not provided here. An example is given below with the original survival data on the left and the binned data on the right ( $w = 1$ ).

| X | Time (Cont.) | Died |
|---|--------------|------|
| 1 | 1.56         | 0    |
| 2 | 2            | 1    |
| 3 | 3.3          | 1    |
| 4 | 3.6          | 0    |
| 5 | 4            | 0    |

| X | Time (Disc.) | Died |
|---|--------------|------|
| 1 | [1, 2)       | 0    |
| 2 | [2, 3)       | 1    |
| 3 | [3, 4)       | 1    |
| 4 | [3, 4)       | 0    |
| 5 | [4, 5)       | 0    |

#### 15.5.1.2 Composition: Survival to Classification Outcome

The binned dataset still has the unique survival data format of utilising two outcomes for training (time and status) but only making a prediction for one outcome (distribution). In order for this to be compatible with classification, the two outcome variables are composed into a single variable.<sup>3</sup> This is achieved by casting the survival times into a ‘wide’ format and creating a new outcome indicator.<sup>4</sup> Two outcome transformations are possible, the first represents a discrete survival function and the second represents a discrete hazard function.<sup>5</sup>

#### Discrete Survival Function Composition

In this composition, the data in the transformed dataset represents the discrete survival function. The new indicator is defined as follows,

$$Y_{i;\tau} := \begin{cases} 1, & T_i > \tau \\ 0, & T_i \leq \tau \cap \Delta_i = 1 \\ -1, & T_i \leq \tau \cap \Delta_i = 0 \end{cases}$$

At a given discrete time  $\tau$ , an observation,  $i$ , is either alive ( $Y_{i;\tau} = 1$ ), dead ( $Y_{i;\tau} = 0$ ), or censored ( $Y_{i;\tau} = -1$ ). Therefore  $\hat{P}(Y_{i;\tau} = 1) = \hat{S}_i(\tau)$ , motivating this particular choice of representation.

<sup>2</sup>Binning is described here with equal widths but generalises to unequal widths trivially.

<sup>3</sup>This is the first key divergence from other discrete-time classification strategies, which use the censoring indicator as the outcome and the time outcome as a feature.

<sup>4</sup>This is the second key divergence from other discrete-time classification strategies, which keep the data in a ‘long’ format.

<sup>5</sup>This is the final key divergence from other discrete-time classification strategies, which enforce the discrete hazard representation.



This composition is demonstrated below with the binned data (left) and the composed classification data (right).

| X | Time (Disc.) | Died |
|---|--------------|------|
| 1 | [1, 2)       | 0    |
| 2 | [2, 3)       | 1    |
| 3 | [3, 4)       | 1    |
| 4 | [3, 4)       | 0    |
| 5 | [4, 5)       | 0    |

| X | [1,2) | [2,3) | [3,4) | [4,5) |
|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 | -1    | -1    | -1    | -1    |
| 2 | 1     | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| 3 | 1     | 1     | 0     | 0     |
| 4 | 1     | 1     | -1    | -1    |
| 5 | 1     | 1     | -1    | -1    |

### Discrete Hazard Function Composition

In this composition, the data in the transformed dataset represents the discrete hazard function. The new indicator is defined as follows,

$$Y_{i;\tau}^* := \begin{cases} 1, & T_i = \tau \cap \Delta_i = 1 \\ -1, & T_i = \tau \cap \Delta_i = 0 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

At a given discrete time  $\tau$ , an observation,  $i$ , either experiences the event ( $Y_{i;\tau}^* = 1$ ), experiences censoring ( $Y_{i;\tau}^* = -1$ ), or neither ( $Y_{i;\tau}^* = 0$ ). Utilising sequential multi-label classification problem transformation methods (Section 15.5.1.4) results in  $\hat{P}(Y_{i;\tau}^* = 1) = \hat{h}_i(\tau)$ . If methods are utilised that do not ‘look back’ at predictions then  $\hat{P}(Y_{i;\tau}^* = 1) = \hat{p}_i(\tau)$  (Section 15.5.1.4).<sup>6</sup>

This composition is demonstrated below with the binned data (left) and the composed classification data (right).

| X | Time (Disc.) | Died |
|---|--------------|------|
| 1 | [1, 2)       | 0    |
| 2 | [2, 3)       | 1    |
| 3 | [3, 4)       | 1    |
| 4 | [3, 4)       | 0    |
| 5 | [4, 5)       | 0    |

<sup>6</sup>This important distinction is not required in other discrete-time reduction strategies that automatically condition the prediction by including time as a feature.

| X | [1,2) | [2,3) | [3,4) | [4,5) |
|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 | -1    | 0     | 0     | 0     |
| 2 | 0     | 1     | 0     | 0     |
| 3 | 0     | 0     | 1     | 0     |
| 4 | 0     | 0     | -1    | 0     |
| 5 | 0     | 0     | 0     | -1    |

### Multi-Label Classification Data

In both compositions, survival data t.v.i.  $\mathbb{R}^p \times \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0} \times \{0,1\}$  is transformed to multi-label classification data t.v.i.  $\mathbb{R}^p \times \{-1,0,1\}^K$  for  $K$  binned time-intervals. The multi-label classification task is defined in Section 15.5.1.4 with possible algorithms.

The discrete survival representation has a slightly more natural interpretation and is ‘easier’ for classifiers to use for training as there are more positive events (i.e. more observations alive) to train on, whereas the discrete hazard representation will have relatively few events in each time-point. However the hazard representation leads to more natural predictions (Section 15.5.1.6).

A particular bias that may easily result from the composition of survival to classification data is now discussed.

#### 15.5.1.3 Reduction to Classification Bias

The reduction to classification bias is commonly known (Zhou et al. 2005) but is reiterated briefly here as it must be accounted for in any automated reduction to classification workflow. This bias occurs when making classification predictions about survival at a given time and incorrectly censoring patients who have not been observed long enough, instead of removing them.

By example, say the prediction of interest is five-year survival probabilities after a particular diagnosis, clearly a patient who has only been diagnosed for three years cannot inform this prediction. The bias is introduced if this patient is censored at five-years instead of being removed from the dataset. The result of this bias is to artificially inflate the probability of survival at each time-point as an unknown outcome is treated as censored and therefore alive.

This bias is simply dealt with by removing patients who have not been alive ‘long enough’.<sup>7</sup> Paradoxically, even if a patient is observed to die before the time-point of interest, they should still be removed if they have not been in the dataset ‘long enough’ as failing to do so will result in a bias in the opposite direction, thus over-inflating the proportion of dead observations.

Accounting for this bias is particularly important in the multi-label reduction as the number of observable patients will decrease over time due to censoring.

#### 15.5.1.4 Multi-Label Classification Algorithms

As the work in this section is completely out of the book scope, the full text is in appendix (app-mlc?). The most important contributions from this section are:

<sup>7</sup>Accounting for this bias is only possible if the study start and end dates are known, as well as the date the patient entered the study.

- Reviewing problem transformation methods (Tsoumakas and Katakis 2007) for multi-label classification;
- Identifying that only binary relevance, nested stacking, and classifier chains are appropriate in this reduction; and
- Generalising these methods into a single wrapper for any binary classifier, the ‘LWrapper’.

#### 15.5.1.5 Censoring in Classification

Classification algorithms cannot natively handle the censoring that is included in the survival reduction, but this can be incorporated using one of two approaches.

#### Multi-Class Classification

All multi-label datasets can also handle multi-class data, hence the simplest way in which to handle censoring is to make multi-class predictions in each label for the outcome  $Y_\tau$  *t.v.i.*  $\{-1, 0, 1\}$ . Many off-shelf classification learners can make multi-class predictions natively and simple reductions exist for those that cannot. As a disadvantage to this method, classifiers would then predict if an individual is dead or alive or censored (each mutually exclusive), and not simply alive or dead. Though this could be perceived as an advantage when censoring is informative as this will accurately reflect a real-world competing-risks set-up.

#### Subsetting/Hurdle Models

For this approach, the multi-class task is reduced to two binary class tasks: first predict if a subject is censored or not (dead or alive) and only if the prediction for censoring is below some threshold,  $\alpha \in [0, 1]$ , then predict if the subject is alive or not (dead or censored). If the probability of censoring is high in the first task then the probability of being alive is automatically set to zero in the final prediction, otherwise the prediction from the second task is used. Any classifier can utilise this approach and it has a meaningful interpretation, additionally  $\alpha$  is a tunable hyper-parameter. The main disadvantage is increases to storage and run-time requirements as double the number of models may be fit.

Once the datasets have been composed to classification datasets and censoring is suitably incorporated by either approach, then any probabilistic classification model can be fit on the data. Predictions from these models can either be composed to a distribution prediction (R7) or a survival time prediction (R8).

#### 15.5.1.6 R7) Probabilistic Survival $\rightarrow$ Probabilistic Classification

This final part of the (R7) reduction is described separately for discrete hazard and survival representations of the data (Section 15.5.1.2).

#### Discrete Hazard Representation

In this representation recall that predictions of the positive class,  $P(Y_\tau = 1)$ , are estimating the quantity  $h(\tau)$ . These predictions provide a natural and efficient transformation from predicted hazards to survival probabilities. Let  $\hat{h}_i$  be a predicted hazard function for some observation  $i$ , then the survival function for that observation can be found with a Kaplan-Meier type estimator,

$$\tilde{S}_i(\tau^*) = \prod_{\tau} 1 - \hat{h}_i(\tau)$$

Now predictions are for a pseudo-survival function, which is ‘pseudo’ as it is not right-continuous. Resolving this is discussed below.

### Discrete Survival Representation

In this representation,  $P(Y_\tau = 1)$  is estimating  $S(\tau)$ , which means that predictions from a classification model result in discrete point predictions and not a right-continuous function. More importantly, there is no guarantee that a non-increasing function will be predicted, i.e. there is no guarantee that  $P(Y_j = 1) < P(Y_i = 1)$ , for time-points  $j > i$ .

Unfortunately there is no optimal way of dealing with predictions of this sort and ‘mistakes’ of this kind have been observed in some software implementation. One point to note is that in practice these are quite rare as the probability of survival will always decrease over time. Therefore the ‘usual’ approach is quite ‘hacky’ and involves imputing increasing predictions with the previous prediction, formally,

$$\tilde{S}(i+1) := \min\{P(Y_{i+1} = 1), P(Y_i = 1)\}, \forall i = \mathbb{R}_{\geq 0}$$

assuming  $\tilde{S}(0) = 1$ . Future research should seek more robust alternatives.

### Right-Continuous Survival Function

From either representation, a \ non-increasing but non-continuous pseudo-survival function,  $\tilde{S}$ , is now predicted. Creating a right-continuous function ( $T_1(\tilde{S})$  in **fig-car-R7**) from these point predictions (Figure 15.3 (a)) is relatively simple and well-known with accessible off-shelf software. At the very least, one can assume a constant hazard rate between predictions and cast them into a step function (Figure 15.3 (b)). This is a fairly common assumption and is usually valid as bin-width decreases. Alternatively, the point predictions can be smoothed into a continuous function with off-shelf software, for example with polynomial local regression smoothing (Figure 15.3 (c)) or generalised linear smoothing (Figure 15.3 (d)). Whichever method is chosen, the survival function is now non-increasing right-continuous and the (R7) reduction is complete.

#### 15.5.1.7 R8) Deterministic Survival $\rightarrow$ Probabilistic Classification

Predicting a deterministic survival time from the multi-label classification predictions is relatively straightforward and can be viewed as a discrete analogue to (C3) (Section 15.4.3). For the discrete hazard representation, one can simply take the predicted time-point for an individual to be time at which the predicted hazard probability is highest however this could easily be problematic as there may be multiple time-points at which the predicted hazard equals 1. Instead it is cleaner to first cast the hazard to a pseudo-survival probability (Section 15.5.1.6) and then treat both representations the same.

Let  $\tilde{S}_i$  be the predicted multi-label survival probabilities for an observation  $i$  such that  $\tilde{S}_i(\tau)$  corresponds with  $\hat{P}(Y_{i;\tau} = 1)$  for label  $\tau \in \mathcal{K}$  where  $Y_{i;\tau}$  is defined in Section 15.5.1.2 and  $\mathcal{K} = \{1, \dots, K\}$  is the set of labels for which to make predictions. Then the survival time transformation is defined by

$$T_2(\tilde{S}_i) = \inf\{\tau \in \mathcal{K} : \tilde{S}_i(\tau) \leq \beta\}$$

for some  $\beta \in [0, 1]$ .

This is interpreted as defining the predicted survival time as the first time-point in which the predicted probability of being alive drops below a certain threshold  $\beta$ . Usually  $\beta = 0.5$ , though this can be treated as a hyper-parameter for tuning. This composition can be utilised even if predictions are not non-increasing, as only the first time the predicted survival probability drops below the threshold is considered. With this composition the (R8) reduction is now complete.

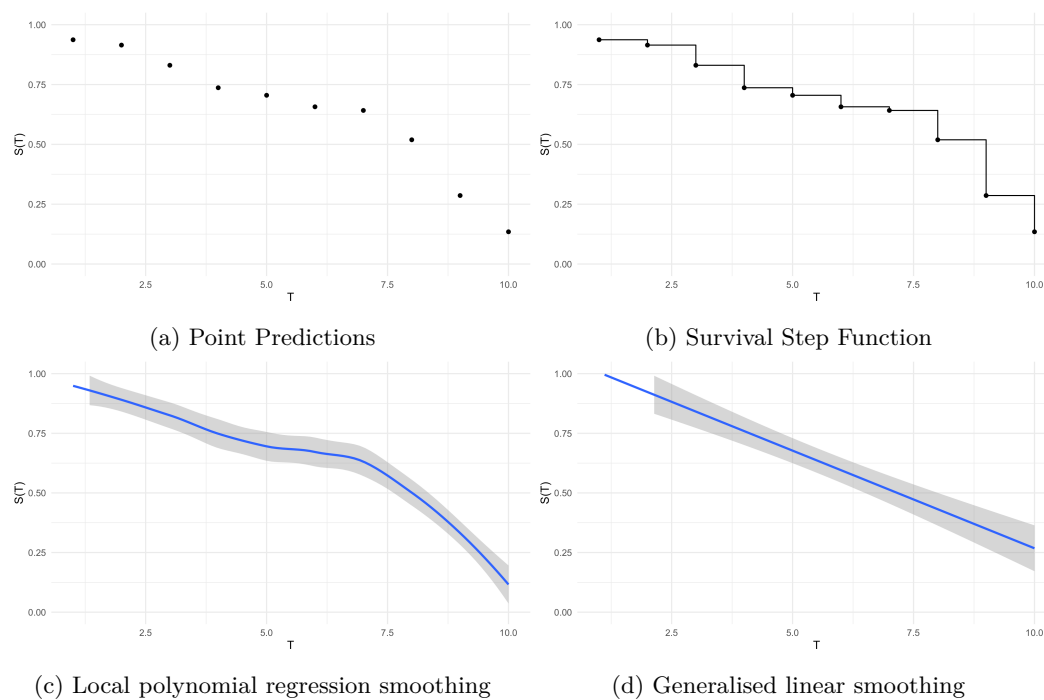


Figure 15.3: Survival function as a: point prediction (a), step function assuming constant risk (b), local polynomial regression smoothing (c), and generalised linear smoothing (d). (c) and (d) computed with [ggplot2](#) (Wickham 2016).

---

## 15.6 Conclusions

This chapter introduced composition and reduction to survival analysis and formalised specific strategies. Formalising these concepts allows for better quality of research and most importantly improved transparency. Clear interface points for hyper-parameters and compositions allow for reproducibility that was previously obfuscated by unclear workflows and imprecise documentation for pipelines.

Additionally, composition and reduction improves accessibility. Reduction workflows vastly increase the number of machine learning models that can be utilised in survival analysis, thus opening the field to those whose experience is limited to regression or classification. Formalisation of workflows allows for precise implementation of model-agnostic pipelines as computational objects, as opposed to functions that are built directly into an algorithm without external interface points.

Finally, predictive performance is also increased by these methods, which is most prominently the case for the survival model averaging compositor (C4) (as demonstrated by RSFs).

All compositions in this chapter, as well as (R1)-(R6), have been implemented in [mlr3proba](#) with the [mlr3pipelines](#) (M. Binder et al. 2019) interface. The reductions to classification will be implemented in a near-future update. Additionally the [discSurv](#) package (Welchowski and Schmid 2019) will be interfaced as a [mlr3proba](#) pipeline to incorporate further discrete-time strategies.

The compositions (C1) and (C3) are included in the benchmark experiment in R. E. B. Sonabend (2021) so that every tested model can make probabilistic survival distribution predictions as well as deterministic survival time predictions. Future research will benchmark all the pipelines in this chapter and will cover algorithm and model selection, tuning, and comparison of performance. Strategies from other papers will also be explored.

# 16

---

## Competing Risks Pipelines

TODO (150-200 WORDS)

 Page coming soon!

**We are working on this page and it will be available soon!**





---

## References

---

- Aalen, Odd. 1978. "Nonparametric Inference for a Family of Counting Processes." *The Annals of Statistics* 6 (4): 701–26.
- Akaike, Hirotugu. 1974. "A New Look at the Statistical Model Identification." *IEEE Transactions on Automatic Control* 19 (6): 716–23. <https://doi.org/10.1093/ietfec/e90-a.12.2762>.
- Akritis, Michael G. 1994. "Nearest Neighbor Estimation of a Bivariate Distribution Under Random Censoring." *Ann. Statist.* 22 (3): 1299–1327. <https://doi.org/10.1214/aos/1176325630>.
- Andres, Axel, Aldo Montano-Loza, Russell Greiner, Max Uhlich, Ping Jin, Bret Hoehn, David Bigam, James Andrew Mark Shapiro, and Norman Mark Kneteman. 2018. "A novel learning algorithm to predict individual survival after liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis." *PLOS ONE* 13 (3): e0193523. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0193523>.
- Becker, Marc, Lennart Schneider, and Sebastian Fischer. 2024. "Hyperparameter Optimization." In *Applied Machine Learning Using mlr3 in R*, edited by Bernd Bischl, Raphael Sonabend, Lars Kotthoff, and Michel Lang. CRC Press. [https://mlr3book.mlr-org.com/hyperparameter\\_optimization.html](https://mlr3book.mlr-org.com/hyperparameter_optimization.html).
- Bennett, Steve. 1983. "Analysis of survival data by the proportional odds model." *Statistics in Medicine* 2 (2): 273–77. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4780020223>.
- Biganzoli, Elia, Patrizia Boracchi, Luigi Mariani, and Ettore Marubini. 1998. "Feed forward neural networks for the analysis of censored survival data: a partial logistic regression approach." *Statistics in Medicine* 17 (10): 1169–86. [https://doi.org/10.1002/\(SICI\)1097-0258\(19980530\)17:10%3C1169::AID-SIM796%3E3.0.CO;2-D](https://doi.org/10.1002/(SICI)1097-0258(19980530)17:10%3C1169::AID-SIM796%3E3.0.CO;2-D).
- Binder, Harald, and Martin Schumacher. 2008. "Allowing for mandatory covariates in boosting estimation of sparse high-dimensional survival models." *BMC Bioinformatics* 9 (1): 14. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2105-9-14>.
- Binder, Harold. 2013. "CoxBoost: Cox models by likelihood based boosting for a single survival endpoint or competing risks." CRAN.
- Binder, Martin, Florian Pfisterer, Bernd Bischl, Michel Lang, and Susanne Dandl. 2019. "mlr3pipelines: Preprocessing Operators and Pipelines for 'mlr3'." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=mlr3pipelines>.
- Bishop, Christopher M. 2006. *Pattern recognition and machine learning*. springer.
- Blanche, Paul, Jean-François Dartigues, and Hélène Jacqmin-Gadda. 2013. "Review and comparison of ROC curve estimators for a time-dependent outcome with marker-dependent censoring." *Biometrical Journal* 55 (5): 687–704. <https://doi.org/10.1002/bimj.201200045>.
- Blanche, Paul, Aurélien Latouche, and Vivian Viallon. 2012. "Time-dependent AUC with right-censored data: a survey study," October. [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4614-8981-8\\_11](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4614-8981-8_11).
- Bland, J Martin, and Douglas G. Altman. 2004. "The logrank test." *BMJ (Clinical Research Ed.)* 328 (7447): 1073. <https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.328.7447.1073>.
- Bou-Hamad, Imad, Denis Larocque, and Hatem Ben-Ameur. 2011. "A review of survival

- trees." *Statist. Surv.* 5: 44–71. <https://doi.org/10.1214/09-SS047>.
- Bower, Hannah, Michael J Crowther, Mark J Rutherford, Therese M.-L. Andersson, Mark Clements, Xing-Rong Liu, Paul W Dickman, and Paul C Lambert. 2019. "Capturing simple and complex time-dependent effects using flexible parametric survival models: A simulation study." *Communications in Statistics - Simulation and Computation*, July, 1–17. <https://doi.org/10.1080/03610918.2019.1634201>.
- Breiman, Leo. 1996. "Bagging Predictors." *Machine Learning* 24 (2): 123–40. <https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1018054314350>.
- Breiman, Leo, and Philip Spector. 1992. "Submodel Selection and Evaluation in Regression. The X-Random Case." *International Statistical Review / Revue Internationale de Statistique* 60 (3): 291–319. <https://doi.org/10.2307/1403680>.
- Brier, Glenn. 1950. "Verification of forecasts expressed in terms of probability." *Monthly Weather Review* 78 (1): 1–3.
- Brilleman, Sam. 2019. "simSurv: Simulate Survival Data." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=simSurv>.
- Buckley, Jonathan, and Ian James. 1979. "Linear Regression with Censored Data." *Biometrika* 66 (3): 429–36. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2335161>.
- Buhlmann, Peter. 2006. "Boosting for high-dimensional linear models." *Ann. Statist.* 34 (2): 559–83. <https://doi.org/10.1214/009053606000000092>.
- Buhlmann, Peter, and Torsten Hothorn. 2007. "Boosting Algorithms: Regularization, Prediction and Model Fitting." *Statist. Sci.* 22 (4): 477–505. <https://doi.org/10.1214/07-STS242>.
- Bühlmann, Peter, and Bin Yu. 2003. "Boosting With the L2 Loss." *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 98 (462): 324–39. <https://doi.org/10.1198/016214503000125>.
- Chambless, Lloyd E, and Guoqing Diao. 2006. "Estimation of time-dependent area under the ROC curve for long-term risk prediction." *Statistics in Medicine* 25 (20): 3474–86. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.2299>.
- Chen, Hung Chia, Ralph L. Kodell, Kuang Fu Cheng, and James J. Chen. 2012. "Assessment of performance of survival prediction models for cancer prognosis." *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 12. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2288-12-102>.
- Chen, Tianqi, Tong He, Michael Benesty, Vadim Khotilovich, Yuan Tang, Hyunsu Cho, Kailong Chen, et al. 2020. "xgboost: Extreme Gradient Boosting." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=xgboost>.
- Chen, Yifei, Zhenyu Jia, Dan Mercola, and Xiaohui Xie. 2013. "A Gradient Boosting Algorithm for Survival Analysis via Direct Optimization of Concordance Index." Edited by Lev Klebanov. *Computational and Mathematical Methods in Medicine* 2013: 873595. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2013/873595>.
- Ching, Travers. 2015. "Cox-Nnet." <https://github.com/lanagarmire/cox-nnet>.
- Ching, Travers, Xun Zhu, and Lana X Garmire. 2018. "Cox-nnet: An artificial neural network method for prognosis prediction of high-throughput omics data." *PLOS Computational Biology* 14 (4): e1006076. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pcbi.1006076>.
- Choodari-Oskoei, Babak, Patrick Royston, and Mahesh K. B. Parmar. 2012a. "A simulation study of predictive ability measures in a survival model I: Explained variation measures." *Statistics in Medicine* 31 (23): 2627–43. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4242>.
- . 2012b. "A simulation study of predictive ability measures in a survival model II: explained randomness and predictive accuracy." *Statistics in Medicine* 31 (23): 2644–59. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4242>.
- Ciampi, Antonio, Sheilah A Hogg, Steve McKinney, and Johanne Thiffault. 1988. "REC-PAM: a computer program for recursive partition and amalgamation for censored survival data and other situations frequently occurring in biostatistics. I. Methods and program features." *Computer Methods and Programs in Biomedicine* 26 (3): 239–56.

- [https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/0169-2607\(88\)90004-1](https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/0169-2607(88)90004-1).
- Ciampi, Antonio, Johanne Thiffault, Jean Pierre Nakache, and Bernard Asselain. 1986. "Stratification by stepwise regression, correspondence analysis and recursive partition: a comparison of three methods of analysis for survival data with covariates." *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis* 4 (3): 185–204. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0167-9473\(86\)90033-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/0167-9473(86)90033-2).
- Collett, David. 2014. *Modelling Survival Data in Medical Research*. 3rd ed. CRC.
- Collins, Gary S., Joris A. De Groot, Susan Dutton, Omar Omar, Milensu Shanyinde, Abdelouahid Tajar, Merryn Voysey, et al. 2014. "External validation of multivariable prediction models: A systematic review of methodological conduct and reporting." *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 14 (1): 1–11. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2288-14-40>.
- Colosimo, Enrico, Flávio Ferreira, Maristela Oliveira, and Cleide Sousa. 2002. "Empirical comparisons between Kaplan-Meier and Nelson-Aalen survival function estimators." *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation* 72 (4): 299–308. <https://doi.org/10.1080/00949650212847>.
- Cox, D. R. 1972. "Regression Models and Life-Tables." *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Statistical Methodology)* 34 (2): 187–220.
- . 1975. "Partial Likelihood." *Biometrika* 62 (2): 269–76. <https://doi.org/10.1080/03610910701884021>.
- Data Study Group Team. 2020. "Data Study Group Final Report: Great Ormond Street Hospital." <https://doi.org/10.5281/zenodo.3670726>.
- Dawid, A P. 1984. "Present Position and Potential Developments: Some Personal Views: Statistical Theory: The Prequential Approach." *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society. Series A (General)* 147 (2): 278–92. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2981683>.
- Dawid, A Philip. 1986. "Probability Forecasting." *Encyclopedia of Statistical Sciences* 7: 210—218.
- Dawid, A Philip, and Monica Musio. 2014. "Theory and Applications of Proper Scoring Rules." *Metron* 72 (2): 169–83. <https://arxiv.org/abs/arXiv:1401.0398v1>.
- Demler, Olga V, Nina P Paynter, and Nancy R Cook. 2015. "Tests of calibration and goodness-of-fit in the survival setting." *Statistics in Medicine* 34 (10): 1659–80. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.6428>.
- Demšar, Janez. 2006. "Statistical comparisons of classifiers over multiple data sets." *Journal of Machine Learning Research* 7 (Jan): 1–30.
- Dietterich, Thomas G. 1998. "Approximate Statistical Tests for Comparing Supervised Classification Learning Algorithms." *Neural Computation* 10 (7): 1895–1923. <https://doi.org/10.1162/089976698300017197>.
- Faraggi, David, and Richard Simon. 1995. "A neural network model for survival data." *Statistics in Medicine* 14 (1): 73–82. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4780140108>.
- Fleming, Thomas R, Judith R O'Fallon, Peter C O'Brien, and David P Harrington. 1980. "Modified Kolmogorov-Smirnov Test Procedures with Application to Arbitrarily Right-Censored Data." *Biometrics* 36 (4): 607–25. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2556114>.
- Fouodo, Cesaire J K, I Konig, C Weihs, A Ziegler, and M Wright. 2018. "Support vector machines for survival analysis with R." *The R Journal* 10 (July): 412–23.
- Freund, Yoav, and Robert E Schapire. 1996. "Experiments with a new boosting algorithm." In. Citeseer.
- Friedman, Jerome. 1999. "Stochastic Gradient Boosting." *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis* 38 (March): 367–78. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-9473\(01\)00065-2](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-9473(01)00065-2).
- Friedman, Jerome H. 2001. "Greedy Function Approximation: A Gradient Boosting Machine." *The Annals of Statistics* 29 (5): 1189–1232. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2699986>.
- Friedman, Michael. 1982. "Piecewise exponential models for survival data with covariates." *The Annals of Statistics* 10 (1): 101–13.

- Gelfand, Alan E, Sujit K Ghosh, Cindy Christiansen, Stephen B Soumerai, and Thomas J McLaughlin. 2000. "Proportional hazards models: a latent competing risk approach." *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series C (Applied Statistics)* 49 (3): 385–97. <https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1111/1467-9876.00199>.
- Gensheimer, Michael F., and Balasubramanian Narasimhan. 2018. "A Simple Discrete-Time Survival Model for Neural Networks," 1–17. <https://doi.org/arXiv:1805.00917v3>.
- Gensheimer, Michael F, and Balasubramanian Narasimhan. 2019. "A scalable discrete-time survival model for neural networks." *PeerJ* 7: e6257.
- Georgousopoulou, Ekavi N, Christos Pitsavos, Christos Mary Yannakoulia, and Demosthenes B Panagiotakos. 2015. "Comparisons between Survival Models in Predicting Cardiovascular Disease Events : Application in the ATTICA Study ( 2002-2012 )." *Journal of Statistics Applications & Probability* 4 (2): 203–10.
- Gerds, Thomas A, and Martin Schumacher. 2006. "Consistent Estimation of the Expected Brier Score in General Survival Models with Right-Censored Event Times." *Biometrical Journal* 48 (6): 1029–40. <https://doi.org/10.1002/bimj.200610301>.
- Gneiting, Tilmann, and Adrian E Raftery. 2007. "Strictly Proper Scoring Rules, Prediction, and Estimation." *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 102 (477): 359–78. <https://doi.org/10.1198/016214506000001437>.
- Goli, Shahrbanoo, Hossein Mahjub, Javad Faradmal, Hoda Mashayekhi, and Ali-Reza Soltanian. 2016. "Survival Prediction and Feature Selection in Patients with Breast Cancer Using Support Vector Regression." Edited by Francesco Pappalardo. *Computational and Mathematical Methods in Medicine* 2016: 2157984. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/2157984>.
- Goli, Shahrbanoo, Hossein Mahjub, Javad Faradmal, and Ali-Reza Soltanian. 2016. "Performance Evaluation of Support Vector Regression Models for Survival Analysis: A Simulation Study." *International Journal of Advanced Computer Science and Applications* 7 (June). <https://doi.org/10.14569/IJACSA.2016.070650>.
- Gompertz, Benjamin. 1825. "On the Nature of the Function Expressive of the Law of Human Mortality, and on a New Mode of Determining the Value of Life Contingencies." *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 115: 513–83.
- Gönen, Mithat, and Glenn Heller. 2005. "Concordance Probability and Discriminatory Power in Proportional Hazards Regression." *Biometrika* 92 (4): 965–70.
- Good, I J. 1952. "Rational Decisions." *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society. Series B (Methodological)* 14 (1): 107–14. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2984087>.
- Gordon, Louis, and Richard A Olshen. 1985. "Tree-structured survival analysis." *Cancer Treatment Reports* 69 (10): 1065–69.
- Graf, Erika, Claudia Schmoor, Willi Sauerbrei, and Martin Schumacher. 1999. "Assessment and comparison of prognostic classification schemes for survival data." *Statistics in Medicine* 18 (17-18): 2529–45. [https://doi.org/10.1002/\(SICI\)1097-0258\(19990915/30\)18:17/18%3C2529::AID-SIM274%3E3.0.CO;2-5](https://doi.org/10.1002/(SICI)1097-0258(19990915/30)18:17/18%3C2529::AID-SIM274%3E3.0.CO;2-5).
- Graf, Erika, and Martin Schumacher. 1995. "An Investigation on Measures of Explained Variation in Survival Analysis." *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society. Series D (The Statistician)* 44 (4): 497–507. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2348898>.
- Greenwell, Brandon, Bradley Boehmke, Jay Cunningham, and. GBM Developers. 2019. "gbm: Generalized Boosted Regression Models." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=gbm>.
- Gressmann, Frithjof, Franz J. Király, Bilal Mateen, and Harald Oberhauser. 2018. "Probabilistic supervised learning." <https://doi.org/10.1002/iub.552>.
- Habibi, Danial, Mohammad Rafiei, Ali Chehrei, Zahra Shayan, and Soheil Tafaqodi. 2018. "Comparison of Survival Models for Analyzing Prognostic Factors in Gastric Cancer Patients." *Asian Pacific Journal of Cancer Prevention : APJCP* 19 (3): 749–53. <https://doi.org/10.1593/ajcp>.

- [//doi.org/10.22034/APJCP.2018.19.3.749](https://doi.org/10.22034/APJCP.2018.19.3.749).
- Haider, Humza, Bret Hoehn, Sarah Davis, and Russell Greiner. 2020. "Effective ways to build and evaluate individual survival distributions." *Journal of Machine Learning Research* 21 (85): 1–63.
- Harrell, F E Jr, K L Lee, R M Califf, D B Pryor, and R A Rosati. 1984. "Regression modelling strategies for improved prognostic prediction." *Statistics in Medicine* 3 (2): 143–52. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4780030207>.
- Harrell, Frank E., Robert M. Califf, and David B. Pryor. 1982. "Evaluating the yield of medical tests." *JAMA* 247 (18): 2543–46. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1001/jama.1982.03320430047030>.
- Harrell, Frank E., Kerry L. Lee, and Daniel B. Mark. 1996. "Multivariable Prognostic Models: Issues in Developing Models, Evaluating Assumptions and Adequacy, and Measuring and Reducing Errors." *Statistics in Medicine* 15: 361–87. [https://doi.org/10.1002/0470023678.ch2b\(i\)](https://doi.org/10.1002/0470023678.ch2b(i)).
- Hastie, Trevor, Robert Tibshirani, and Jerome Friedman. 2001. *The Elements of Statistical Learning*. Springer New York Inc.
- Heagerty, Patrick J., Thomas Lumley, and Margaret S. Pepe. 2000. "Time-Dependent ROC Curves for Censored Survival Data and a Diagnostic Marker." *Biometrics* 56 (2): 337–44. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0006-341X.2000.00337.x>.
- Heagerty, Patrick J., and Yingye Zheng. 2005. "Survival Model Predictive Accuracy and ROC Curves." *Biometrics* 61 (1): 92–105. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0006-341X.2005.030814.x>.
- Henderson, and Velleman. 1981. "Building multiple regression models interactively." *Biometrics* 37: 391—411.
- Herrmann, Moritz, Philipp Probst, Roman Hornung, Vindi Jurinovic, and Anne-Laure Boulesteix. 2021. "Large-scale benchmark study of survival prediction methods using multi-omics data." *Briefings in Bioinformatics* 22 (3). <https://doi.org/10.1093/bib/bbaa167>.
- Hielscher, Thomas, Manuela Zucknick, Wiebke Werft, and Axel Benner. 2010. "On the Prognostic Value of Gene Expression Signatures for Censored Data BT - Advances in Data Analysis, Data Handling and Business Intelligence." In, edited by Andreas Fink, Berthold Lausen, Wilfried Seidel, and Alfred Ultsch, 663–73. Berlin, Heidelberg: Springer Berlin Heidelberg.
- Hosmer, David W, and Stanley Lemeshow. 1980. "Goodness of fit tests for the multiple logistic regression model." *Communications in Statistics-Theory and Methods* 9 (10): 1043–69.
- Hosmer Jr, David W, Stanley Lemeshow, and Susanne May. 2011. *Applied survival analysis: regression modeling of time-to-event data*. Vol. 618. John Wiley & Sons.
- Hothorn, Torsten, Peter Buehlmann, Thomas Kneib, Matthias Schmid, and Benjamin Hofner. 2020. "mboost: Model-Based Boosting." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=mboost>.
- Hothorn, Torsten, Peter Bühlmann, Sandrine Dudoit, Annette Molinaro, and Mark J Van Der Laan. 2005. "Survival ensembles." *Biostatistics* 7 (3): 355–73. <https://doi.org/10.1093/biostatistics/kxj011>.
- Hothorn, Torsten, Kurt Hornik, and Achim Zeileis. 2006. "Unbiased Recursive Partitioning: A Conditional Inference Framework." *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics* 15 (3): 651—674.
- Hothorn, Torsten, and Berthold Lausen. 2003. "On the exact distribution of maximally selected rank statistics." *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis* 43 (2): 121–37. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-9473\(02\)00225-6](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0167-9473(02)00225-6).
- Hothorn, Torsten, Berthold Lausen, Axel Benner, and Martin Radespiel-Tröger. 2004. "Bagging survival trees." *Statistics in Medicine* 23 (1): 77–91. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.>



- 1593.
- Hothorn, Torsten, and Achim Zeileis. 2015. "partykit: A Modular Toolkit for Recursive Partytioning in R." *Journal of Machine Learning Research* 16: 3905–9. <http://jmlr.org/papers/v16/hothorn15a.html>.
- Huang, Shigao, Jie Yang, Simon Fong, and Qi Zhao. 2020. "Artificial intelligence in cancer diagnosis and prognosis: Opportunities and challenges." *Cancer Letters* 471: 61–71. <https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.canlet.2019.12.007>.
- Hung, Hung, and Chin-Tsang Chiang. 2010. "Estimation methods for time-dependent AUC models with survival data." *The Canadian Journal of Statistics / La Revue Canadienne de Statistique* 38 (1): 8–26. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/27805213>.
- HURVICH, CLIFFORD M, and CHIH-LING TSAI. 1989. "Regression and time series model selection in small samples." *Biometrika* 76 (2): 297–307. <https://doi.org/10.1093/biomet/76.2.297>.
- Ishwaran, By Hemant, Udaya B Kogalur, Eugene H Blackstone, and Michael S Lauer. 2008. "Random survival forests." *The Annals of Statistics* 2 (3): 841–60. <https://doi.org/10.1214/08-AOAS169>.
- Ishwaran, Hemant, Eugene H Blackstone, Claire E Pothier, and Michael S Lauer. 2004. "Relative Risk Forests for Exercise Heart Rate Recovery as a Predictor of Mortality." *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 99 (467): 591–600. <https://doi.org/10.1198/016214504000000638>.
- Ishwaran, Hemant, and Udaya B Kogalur. 2018. "randomForestSRC." <https://cran.r-project.org/package=randomForestSRC>.
- Jackson, Christopher. 2016. "flexsurv: A Platform for Parametric Survival Modeling in R." *Journal of Statistical Software* 70 (8): 1–33.
- Jager, Kitty J, Paul C van Dijk, Carmine Zoccali, and Friedo W Dekker. 2008. "The analysis of survival data: the Kaplan–Meier method." *Kidney International* 74 (5): 560–65. <https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1038/ki.2008.217>.
- James, Gareth, Daniela Witten, Trevor Hastie, and Robert Tibshirani. 2013. *An introduction to statistical learning*. Vol. 112. New York: Springer.
- Jiao, Yasen, and Pufeng Du. 2016. "Performance measures in evaluating machine learning based bioinformatics predictors for classifications." *Quantitative Biology* 4 (4): 320–30.
- Jing, Bingzhong, Tao Zhang, Zixian Wang, Ying Jin, Kuiyuan Liu, Wenze Qiu, Liangru Ke, et al. 2018. "RankDeepSurv." <https://github.com/sysucc-ailab/RankDeepSurv>.
- , et al. 2019. "A deep survival analysis method based on ranking." *Artificial Intelligence in Medicine* 98: 1–9. <https://doi.org/https://doi.org/10.1016/j.artmed.2019.06.001>.
- Johnson, Brent A, and Qi Long. 2011. "Survival ensembles by the sum of pairwise differences with application to lung cancer microarray studies." *Ann. Appl. Stat.* 5 (2A): 1081–101. <https://doi.org/10.1214/10-AOAS426>.
- Kalbfleisch, J. D., and R. L. Prentice. 1973. "Marginal likelihoods based on Cox's regression and life model." *Biometrika* 60 (2): 267–78. <https://doi.org/10.1093/biomet/60.2.267>.
- Kalbfleisch, John D, and Ross L Prentice. 2011. *The statistical analysis of failure time data*. Vol. 360. John Wiley & Sons.
- Kamarudin, Adina Najwa, Trevor Cox, and Ruwanthi Kolamunnage-Dona. 2017. "Time-dependent ROC curve analysis in medical research: Current methods and applications." *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 17 (1): 1–19. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12874-017-0332-6>.
- Katzman, Jared L, Uri Shaham, Alexander Cloninger, Jonathan Bates, Tingting Jiang, and Yuval Kluger. 2018. "DeepSurv: personalized treatment recommender system using a Cox proportional hazards deep neural network." *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 18 (1): 24. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12874-018-0482-1>.
- Kent, John T., and John O'Quigley. 1988. "Measures of dependence for censored survival

- data.” *Biometrika* 75 (3): 525–34. <https://doi.org/10.1093/biomet/75.3.525>.
- Khan, Faisal M., and Valentina Bayer Zubek. 2008. “Support vector regression for censored data (SVRc): A novel tool for survival analysis.” *Proceedings - IEEE International Conference on Data Mining, ICDM*, 863–68. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ICDM.2008.50>.
- Király, Franz J., Markus Löning, Anthony Blaom, Ahmed Guecioueur, and Raphael Sonabend. 2021. “Designing Machine Learning Toolboxes: Concepts, Principles and Patterns.” *arXiv*, January. <http://arxiv.org/abs/2101.04938>.
- Kirman, S N U A, and Ramesh C Gupta. 2001. “On the Proportional Odds Model in Survival Analysis.” *Annals of the Institute of Statistical Mathematics* 53 (2): 203–16. <https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1012458303498>.
- Klein, John P, and Melvin L Moeschberger. 2003. *Survival analysis: techniques for censored and truncated data*. 2nd ed. Springer Science & Business Media.
- Kohavi, Ron. 1995. “A study of cross-validation and bootstrap for accuracy estimation and model selection.” *Ijcai* 14 (2): 1137–45.
- Korn, Edward L., and Richard Simon. 1990. “Measures of explained variation for survival data.” *Statistics in Medicine* 9 (5): 487–503. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4780090503>.
- Korn, Edward L, and Richard Simon. 1991. “Explained Residual Variation, Explained Risk, and Goodness of Fit.” *The American Statistician* 45 (3): 201–6. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2684290>.
- Koziol, James A., and Zhenyu Jia. 2009. “The concordance index C and the Mann-Whitney parameter  $\Pr(X>Y)$  with randomly censored data.” *Biometrical Journal* 51 (3): 467–74. <https://doi.org/10.1002/bimj.200800228>.
- Kvamme, Håvard. 2018. “Pycox.” <https://pypi.org/project/pycox/>.
- Kvamme, Håvard, Ørnulf Borgan, and Ida Scheel. 2019. “Time-to-event prediction with neural networks and Cox regression.” *Journal of Machine Learning Research* 20 (129): 1–30.
- Laan, Mark K van der, Eric C Polley, and Alan E Hubbard. 2007. “Super Learner.” *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* 6 (1). <https://doi.org/10.2202/1544-6115.1309>.
- Langford, John, Paul Mineiro, Alina Beygelzimer, and Hal Daume. 2016. “Learning Reductions that Really Work.” *Proceedings of the IEEE* 104 (1).
- Lawless, Jerald F, and Yan Yuan. 2010. “Estimation of prediction error for survival models.” *Statistics in Medicine* 29 (2): 262–74. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.3758>.
- Lazer, David, Ryan Kennedy, Gary King, and Alessandro Vespignani. 2014. “The Parable of Google Flu: Traps in Big Data Analysis.” *Science* 343 (6176): 1203 LP–1205. <https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1248506>.
- LeBlanc, Michael, and John Crowley. 1992. “Relative Risk Trees for Censored Survival Data.” *Biometrics* 48 (2): 411–25. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2532300>.
- . 1993. “Survival Trees by Goodness of Split.” *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 88 (422): 457–67. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2290325>.
- Lee, Changhee, William Zame, Jinsung Yoon, and Mihaela Van der Schaar. 2018. “DeepHit: A Deep Learning Approach to Survival Analysis With Competing Risks.” *Proceedings of the AAAI Conference on Artificial Intelligence* 32 (1). <https://doi.org/10.1609/aaai.v32i1.11842>.
- Lee, Donald K K, Ningyuan Chen, and Hemant Ishwaran. 2019. “Boosted nonparametric hazards with time-dependent covariates.” <https://arxiv.org/abs/arXiv:1701.07926v6>.
- Li, Liang, Tom Greene, and Bo Hu. 2018. “A simple method to estimate the time-dependent receiver operating characteristic curve and the area under the curve with right censored data.” *Statistical Methods in Medical Research* 27 (8): 2264–78. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0962280216680239>.
- Liang, Hua, and Guohua Zou. 2008. “Improved AIC Selection Strategy for Survival Analy-

- sis.” *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis* 52 (5): 2538–48. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csda.2007.09.003>.
- Liestol, Knut, Per Kragh Andersen, and Ulrich Andersen. 1994. “Survival analysis and neural nets.” *Statistics in Medicine* 13 (12): 1189–1200. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4780131202>.
- Lundberg, Scott M, and Su-In Lee. 2017. “A Unified Approach to Interpreting Model Predictions.” *Advances in Neural Information Processing Systems* 30.
- Luxhoj, James T., and Huan Jyh Shyur. 1997. “Comparison of proportional hazards models and neural networks for reliability estimation.” *Journal of Intelligent Manufacturing* 8 (3): 227–34. <https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1018525308809>.
- Ma, Shuangge, and Jian Huang. 2006. “Regularized ROC method for disease classification and biomarker selection with microarray data.” *Bioinformatics (Oxford, England)* 21 (January): 4356–62. <https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/bti724>.
- Mayr, Andreas, Benjamin Hofner, and Matthias Schmid. 2016. “Boosting the discriminatory power of sparse survival models via optimization of the concordance index and stability selection.” *BMC Bioinformatics* 17 (1): 288. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12859-016-1149-8>.
- Mayr, Andreas, and Matthias Schmid. 2014. “Boosting the concordance index for survival data—a unified framework to derive and evaluate biomarker combinations.” *PloS One* 9 (1): e84483–83. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0084483>.
- Meinshausen, Nicolai, and Peter Bühlmann. 2010. “Stability selection.” *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Statistical Methodology)* 72 (4): 417–73. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9868.2010.00740.x>.
- Moghimidehkordi, Bijan, Azadeh Safaee, Mohamad Amin Pourhoseingholi, Reza Fatemi, Ziauddin Tabeie, and Mohammad Reza Zali. 2008. “Statistical Comparison of Survival Models for Analysis of Cancer Data.” *Asian Pacific Journal of Cancer Prevention* 9: 417–20.
- Molnar, Christoph. 2019. *Interpretable Machine Learning*. <https://christophm.github.io/interpretable-ml-book/>.
- Murphy, Allan H. 1973. “A New Vector Partition of the Probability Score.” *Journal of Applied Meteorology and Climatology* 12 (4): 595–600. [https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0450\(1973\)012%3C0595:ANVPOT%3E2.0.CO;2](https://doi.org/10.1175/1520-0450(1973)012%3C0595:ANVPOT%3E2.0.CO;2).
- Nadeau, Claude, and Yoshua Bengio. 2003. “Inference for the Generalization Error.” *Machine Learning* 52 (3): 239–81. <https://doi.org/10.1023/A:1024068626366>.
- Nasejje, Justine B, Henry Mwambi, Keertan Dheda, and Maia Lesosky. 2017. “A comparison of the conditional inference survival forest model to random survival forests based on a simulation study as well as on two applications with time-to-event data.” *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 17 (1): 115. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12874-017-0383-8>.
- Nelson, Wayne. 1972. “Theory and Applications of Hazard Plotting for Censored Failure Data.” *Technometrics* 14 (4): 945–66.
- Newson, Roger B. 1983. “Comparing the predictive power of survival models using Harrell’s *c* or Somers’ *D*.” *The Stata Journal*, no. ii: 1–19.
- Ng, Ryan, Kathy Kornas, Rinku Sutradhar, Walter P. Wodchis, and Laura C. Rosella. 2018. “The current application of the Royston-Parmar model for prognostic modeling in health research: a scoping review.” *Diagnostic and Prognostic Research* 2 (1): 4. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s41512-018-0026-5>.
- Patel, Katie, Richard Kay, and Lucy Rowell. 2006. “Comparing proportional hazards and accelerated failure time models: An application in influenza.” *Pharmaceutical Statistics* 5 (3): 213–24. <https://doi.org/10.1002/pst.213>.
- Pencina, Michael J., Ralph B. D’Agostino, and Linze Song. 2012. “Quantifying discrimination of Framingham risk functions with different survival C statistics.” *Statistics in Medicine* 31 (15): 1543–53. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.4508>.



- Peters, Andrea, and Torsten Hothorn. 2019. “ipred: Improved Predictors.” CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=ipred>.
- Polley, Eric C, and Mark J Van Der Laan. 2010. “Super learner in prediction.”
- Pölsterl, Sebastian. 2020. “scikit-survival: A Library for Time-to-Event Analysis Built on Top of scikit-learn.” *Journal of Machine Learning Research* 21 (212): 1—6. <http://jmlr.org/papers/v21/20-729.html>.
- Potapov, Sergej, Werner Adler, and Matthias Schmid. 2012. “survAUC: Estimators of prediction accuracy for time-to-event data.”
- Qi, Jiezh. 2009. “Comparison of Proportional Hazards and Accelerated Failure Time Models.” PhD thesis.
- R., Cox, and Snell J. 1968. “A General Definition of Residuals.” *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Statistical Methodology)* 30 (2): 248–75.
- Rahman, M. Shafiqur, Gareth Ambler, Babak Choodari-Oskooei, and Rumana Z. Omar. 2017. “Review and evaluation of performance measures for survival prediction models in external validation settings.” *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 17 (1): 1–15. <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12874-017-0336-2>.
- Reid, Nancy. 1994. “A Conversation with Sir David Cox.” *Statistical Science* 9 (3): 439–55. <https://doi.org/10.1214/aos/1176348654>.
- Ridgeway, Greg. 1999. “The state of boosting.” *Computing Science and Statistics* 31: 172–181.
- Royston, Patrick, and Douglas G. Altman. 2013. “External validation of a Cox prognostic model: Principles and methods.” *BMC Medical Research Methodology* 13 (1). <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2288-13-33>.
- Royston, Patrick, and Mahesh K. B. Parmar. 2002. “Flexible parametric proportional-hazards and proportional-odds models for censored survival data, with application to prognostic modelling and estimation of treatment effects.” *Statistics in Medicine* 21 (15): 2175–97. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.1203>.
- Royston, Patrick, and Willi Sauerbrei. 2004. “A new measure of prognostic separation in survival data.” *Statistics in Medicine* 23 (5): 723–48. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.1621>.
- Sashegyi, Andreas, and David Ferry. 2017. “On the Interpretation of the Hazard Ratio and Communication of Survival Benefit.” *The Oncologist* 22 (4): 484–86. <https://doi.org/10.1634/theoncologist.2016-0198>.
- Schemper, Michael, and Robin Henderson. 2000. “Predictive Accuracy and Explained Variation in Cox Regression.” *Biometrics* 56: 249–55. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.1486>.
- Schmid, Matthias, Thomas Hielscher, Thomas Augustin, and Olaf Gefeller. 2011. “A Robust Alternative to the Schemper-Henderson Estimator of Prediction Error.” *Biometrics* 67 (2): 524–35. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1541-0420.2010.01459.x>.
- Schmid, Matthias, and Torsten Hothorn. 2008a. “Boosting additive models using component-wise P-splines.” *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis* 53 (2): 298–311.
- . 2008b. “Flexible boosting of accelerated failure time models.” *BMC Bioinformatics* 9 (February): 269. <https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2105-9-269>.
- Schmid, Matthias, and Sergej Potapov. 2012. “A comparison of estimators to evaluate the discriminatory power of time-to-event models.” *Statistics in Medicine* 31 (23): 2588–2609. <https://doi.org/10.1002/sim.5464>.
- Schwarz, Gideon. 1978. “Estimating the Dimension of a Model.” *The Annals of Statistics* 6 (2): 461–64. <https://doi.org/10.1214/aos/1176344136>.
- Schwarzer, Guido, Werner Vach, and Martin Schumacher. 2000. “On the misuses of artificial neural networks for prognostic and diagnostic classification in oncology.” *Statistics in Medicine* 19 (4): 541–61. [https://doi.org/10.1002/\(SICI\)1097-0258\(20000229\)19:4%3C541::AID-SIM355%3E3.0.CO;2-V](https://doi.org/10.1002/(SICI)1097-0258(20000229)19:4%3C541::AID-SIM355%3E3.0.CO;2-V).
- Segal, Mark Robert. 1988. “Regression Trees for Censored Data.” *Biometrics* 44 (1): 35—

- 47.
- Shivaswamy, Pannagadatta K., Wei Chu, and Martin Jansche. 2007. "A support vector approach to censored targets." In *Proceedings - IEEE International Conference on Data Mining, ICDM*, 655–60. <https://doi.org/10.1109/ICDM.2007.93>.
- Sonabend, Raphael. 2020. "survivalmodels: Models for Survival Analysis." CRAN. <https://raphaels1.r-universe.dev/ui#package:survivalmodels>.
- Sonabend, Raphael Edward Benjamin. 2021. "A Theoretical and Methodological Framework for Machine Learning in Survival Analysis: Enabling Transparent and Accessible Predictive Modelling on Right-Censored Time-to-Event Data." PhD, University College London (UCL). <https://discovery.ucl.ac.uk/id/eprint/10129352/>.
- Sonabend, Raphael, Franz J Király, Andreas Bender, Bernd Bischl, and Michel Lang. 2021. "mlr3proba: an R package for machine learning in survival analysis." Edited by Jonathan Wren. *Bioinformatics* 37 (17): 2789–91. <https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btab039>.
- Sonabend, Raphael, Florian Pfisterer, Alan Mishler, Moritz Schauer, Lukas Burk, Sumantrak Mukherjee, and Sebastian Vollmer. 2022. "Flexible Group Fairness Metrics for Survival Analysis." In *DSHealth 2022 Workshop on Applied Data Science for Healthcare at KDD2022*. <http://arxiv.org/abs/2206.03256>.
- Song, Xiao, and Xiao-Hua Zhou. 2008. "A semiparametric approach for the covariate specific ROC curve with survival outcome." *Statistica Sinica* 18 (July): 947–65.
- Spooner, Annette, Emily Chen, Arcot Sowmya, Perminder Sachdev, Nicole A Kochan, Julian Trollor, and Henry Brodaty. 2020. "A comparison of machine learning methods for survival analysis of high-dimensional clinical data for dementia prediction." *Scientific Reports* 10 (1): 20410. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-77220-w>.
- Spruance, Spotswood L, Julia E Reid, Michael Grace, and Matthew Samore. 2004. "Hazard ratio in clinical trials." *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy* 48 (8): 2787–92. <https://doi.org/10.1128/AAC.48.8.2787-2792.2004>.
- Therneau, Terry M. 2015. "A Package for Survival Analysis in S." <https://cran.r-project.org/package=survival>.
- Therneau, Terry M., and Beth Atkinson. 2019. "rpart: Recursive Partitioning and Regression Trees." CRAN.
- Therneau, Terry M., and Elizabeth Atkinson. 2020. "Concordance." <https://cran.r-project.org/web/packages/survival/vignettes/concordance.pdf>.
- Therneau, Terry M., Patricia M. Grambsch, and Thomas R. Fleming. 1990. "Martingale-based residuals for survival models." *Biometrika* 77 (1): 147–60. <https://doi.org/10.1093/biomet/77.1.147>.
- Tsiatis, A. 1975. "A nonidentifiability aspect of the problem of competing risks." *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 72 (1): 20–22. <https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.72.1.20>.
- Tsoumakas, Grigorios, and Ioannis Katakis. 2007. "Multi-Label Classification: An Overview." *International Journal of Data Warehousing and Mining* 3 (3): 1–13. <https://doi.org/10.4018/jdwm.2007070101>.
- Tutz, Gerhard, and Harald Binder. 2007. "Boosting Ridge Regression." *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis* 51 (February): 6044–59. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.csda.2006.11.041>.
- Tutz, Gerhard, and Matthias Schmid. 2016. *Modeling Discrete Time-to-Event Data*. Springer Series in Statistics. Cham: Springer International Publishing. <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-28158-2>.
- Uno, Hajime, Tianxi Cai, Michael J. Pencina, Ralph B. D'Agostino, and L J Wei. 2011. "On the C-statistics for Evaluating Overall Adequacy of Risk Prediction Procedures with Censored Survival Data." *Statistics in Medicine* 30 (10): 1105–17. <https://doi.org/>

- 10.1002/sim.4154.
- Uno, Hajime, Tianxi Cai, Lu Tian, and L J Wei. 2007. "Evaluating Prediction Rules for t-Year Survivors with Censored Regression Models." *Journal of the American Statistical Association* 102 (478): 527–37. <http://www.jstor.org/stable/27639883>.
- Ushey, Kevin, J J Allaire, and Yuan Tang. 2020. "reticulate: Interface to 'Python'." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=reticulate>.
- Van Belle, Vanya, Kristiaan Pelckmans, Johan A. K. Suykens, and Sabine Van Huffel. 2007. "Support Vector Machines for Survival Analysis." In *In Proceedings of the Third International Conference on Computational Intelligence in Medicine and Healthcare*. 1.
- Van Belle, Vanya, Kristiaan Pelckmans, Sabine Van Huffel, and Johan A. K. Suykens. 2011. "Support vector methods for survival analysis: A comparison between ranking and regression approaches." *Artificial Intelligence in Medicine* 53 (2): 107–18. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.artmed.2011.06.006>.
- Van Houwelingen, Hans C. 2000. "Validation, calibration, revision and combination of prognostic survival models." *Statistics in Medicine* 19 (24): 3401–15. [https://doi.org/10.1002/1097-0258\(20001230\)19:24%3C3401::AID-SIM554%3E3.0.CO;2-2](https://doi.org/10.1002/1097-0258(20001230)19:24%3C3401::AID-SIM554%3E3.0.CO;2-2).
- . 2007. "Dynamic prediction by landmarking in event history analysis." *Scandinavian Journal of Statistics* 34 (1): 70–85. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9469.2006.00529.x>.
- Volinsky, Chris T, and Adrian E Raftery. 2000. "Bayesian Information Criterion for Censored Survival Models." *International Biometric Society* 56 (1): 256–62.
- Wang, Hong, and Gang Li. 2017. "A Selective Review on Random Survival Forests for High Dimensional Data." *Quantitative Bio-Science* 36 (2): 85–96. <https://doi.org/10.22283/qbs.2017.36.2.85>.
- Wang, Ping, Yan Li, and Chandan K. Reddy. 2019. "Machine Learning for Survival Analysis." *ACM Computing Surveys* 51 (6): 1–36. <https://doi.org/10.1145/3214306>.
- Wang, Zhu. 2019. "bujar: Buckley-James Regression for Survival Data with High-Dimensional Covariates." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=bujar>.
- Wang, Zhu, and C Y Wang. 2010. "Buckley-James Boosting for Survival Analysis with High-Dimensional Biomarker Data." *Statistical Applications in Genetics and Molecular Biology* 9 (1). <https://doi.org/10.2202/1544-6115.1550>.
- Wei, L J. 1992. "The Accelerated Failure Time Model: A Useful Alternative to the Cox Regression Model in Survival Analysis." *Statistics in Medicine* 11: 1871–79.
- Welchowski, Thomas, and Matthias Schmid. 2019. "discSurv: Discrete Time Survival Analysis." CRAN. <https://cran.r-project.org/package=discSurv>.
- Wickham, Hadley. 2016. *ggplot2: Elegant Graphics for Data Analysis*. Springer-Verlag New York. <https://ggplot2.tidyverse.org>.
- Wolpert, David H. 1992. "Stacked generalization." *Neural Networks* 5 (2): 241–59. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0893-6080\(05\)80023-1](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0893-6080(05)80023-1).
- Wright, Marvin N., and Andreas Ziegler. 2017. "ranger: A Fast Implementation of Random Forests for High Dimensional Data in C++ and R." *Journal of Statistical Software* 77 (1): 1—17.
- Zare, Ali, Mostafa Hosseini, Mahmood Mahmoodi, Kazem Mohammad, Hojjat Zeraati, and Kourosh Holakouie Naieni. 2015. "A Comparison between Accelerated Failure-time and Cox Proportional Hazard Models in Analyzing the Survival of Gastric Cancer Patients." *Iranian Journal of Public Health* 44 (8): 1095–1102. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s00606-006-0435-8>.
- Zhao, Lili, and Dai Feng. 2020. "Deep Neural Networks for Survival Analysis Using Pseudo Values." *IEEE Journal of Biomedical and Health Informatics* 24 (11): 3308–14. <https://doi.org/10.1109/JBHI.2020.2980204>.
- Zhou, Zheng, Elham Rahme, Michal Abrahamowicz, and Louise Pilote. 2005. "Survival Bias Associated with Time-to-Treatment Initiation in Drug Effectiveness Evaluation: A

Comparison of Methods.” *American Journal of Epidemiology* 162 (10): 1016–23. <https://doi.org/10.1093/aje/kwi307>.

---

## ***Index***

---

ggplot2, 131  
simsurv, 46, 48, 49  
discSurv, 125, 132  
mlr3pipelines, 132  
mlr3proba, 115, 120, 132  
renv, 5